GROVNDS OF GRAMMER PENNED AND *PVBLISHED.*

By

IOHN BIRD Schoolemaster
in the Citty of Glocester.

Ἐν πᾶσι τὸ τέλειον ἀδύνατον. Πλουτάρχ.
περὶ παιδὶ. αγωγ.

OXFORD,
Printed by L. LICHFIELD, for
Humphery Mosley, at the Princes
Armes in St. *Pauls* Church-yard.
M. DC. XXXXI.

BIBLIOTHECA · BODLEIANA

GRammar is an art of ſpeaking well.

There be two parts of Grammar { *Rudiment* / *Regiment*.

Rudiment is either { *Elementary* / or / *Accidentary*.

The *Elementary rudiment*, in order of nature and neceſſity doth goe before the *Accidentary*: becauſe letters goe before ſyllables, ſyllables before words, and words before ſpeech. For of letters are made ſyllables, of ſyllables words, and of words Speech.

The *Elementary Rudiment* is that which treats of the Elements of Speech, *viz*. *A letter*, *A ſyllable*, *A word*, and the *affections* thereof.

A *Letter* is an *Element* from whence *Syllables* and words take their beginning. The *Latines* make uſe of twenty *Letters only*.

A B C D E F G H I L M N O P Q R S T V X.

a b c d e f g h i l m n o p q r ſ t u x.

Letters are firſt divided into { *Vowells*. / and / *Conſonants*.

A *Vowell* is ſo called becauſe it makes a perfect ſound of it ſelfe.

There are five *Vowels* a e i o u. All which ſometimes doe ſupply the places of *Syllables*; and *words* alſo, except V. I, and U, *vowells* are diſtinguiſhed from I and V *conſonants*, in the forme of writing after this manner, I U. i u. *vowells*, J. V. j. v. *conſonants*. I. is ſometimes a vowell, ſometimes a conſonant, and ſometimes a double conſonant, as in this word *jejunium*. I betwixt two vowells is a double conſonant, as in this word, *major*, unleſſe another i immediatly goe before it, as in theſe words *bijuges*, *quadrijuges*.

A *conſonant* is a letter which maketh a ſound, being joyned with a *vowell*.

There are fifteen *conſonäts* which are divided into { Nine mutes b c d f g h p q t. / Sixe halfe-vowells.

Which are divided into { Five Liquids. l m n r s. / One double *conſonant* x.

They are called *Mutes*, becauſe they make no diſtinct ſound by themſelves.

The halfe *Vowells* are ſo called, becauſe they doe make (as it were) halfe a ſound by themſelves.

The *Liquids* likewiſe are ſo called, becauſe they doe ſometimes (as it were) melt, (that is) looſe their force and power.

L and R may ſometimes looſe their force, when they next follow a *mute*, in ſimple *Latine* words, as in *Atlas*, *Volucris*, but not in compound words, as *abluo*, *obruo*, unleſſe they concurre with the *mute*, to the conſtitution of the Syllable, as *Agathocles*, *Democritus*, *Locuples*. M. and N. looſe their power in latinated words only, as *Tecmeſſa*, *Progne*. S with the Ancients is ſaid ſometimes to melt, (that is)

to

to loose the force of a Consonant. H. is sounded with all vowells, as *Hamus*, *Hebes*, *hiatus*, *homo*, *humus*, *hymnus*, and therefore much like a consonant it maketh no distinct sound by it selfe, therefore a mute, it hindereth *Synalæpha* often, as *Virg.*

Clamâssent ut littus Hyla Hyla omne sonaret.

it maketh a vowell long by *positiou*, as *Manilius.*

Nec gravius cedit, nec horrens frigore cedit.

therefore it seems more then a bare Aspiratiõ, besides both the *Scaligers*, *Iosephus* and *Iulius*, *Pierius*, *Diomedes*, *Velius Longus*, *Valerius Probus*, and divers others judge it to be a Consonant: and if it be not so with the *Poets*: the figure *Cæsura* is exercised more about this then any other letter, but I will no waies contradict ancient Grammarians. Words that have the letter y. or z. written in them, or beginning with x, are not *Latine*, but *Latinized* words, (i) derived of the *Greeke*, x. and z. in latinized words, and x. in Latine words, are double consonants, because they have the force of two consonants. So that they may be resolved: x. into, g s, as *Allobrox*, *ogis*, *Rex*, *gis*, or rather into c, s, as *Thrax*, *cis*, *Dux*, *cis*, and z. into double ſſ, as of *Maza* is made *Massa*, of *patrizo patrissõ*, or rather into d s, as *Gaza Gadsa*. Letters are otherwise divided into great and small. Proper names, & those that flow from thence, Names of Arts, the beginings of sentences, and Names of Offices and Dignities, are to be written with great Letters, other words for the most part are to be written with small. Great letters when they are written by themselves, or some of them togither, are used for these and such like words.

For

A.	*Aulus.*
AV.	*Amplitudo vestra.*
B.	*Beatus (inter Scholasticos)*
C.	*Caius.*
C.M.	*Cæsarea Majestas.*
C. V.	*Celsitudo vestra.*
Cos.	*Consul.*
Coss.	*Consules.*
D.	*Decius. Doctor. Dominus. Deus.*
D.D.	*Dono dedit.*
E.T.	*Excellentia tua.*
G.	*Gaius.*
H.S.	*Sestertius.*
IC.	*Iuris consulti.*
L.	*Lucius.*
L.L.	*Lingua Latina.*
M.	*Marcus.*
MS. / MSs.	*Manuscriptum.*
Ms. i / o / is	*Manuscript* i / o / is
N.	*Nota.*
N.T.	*Novum Testamentum.*
P.	*Publius.*
P.C.	*Patres conscripti. Palatinus comes.*
P L.	*Poëta Laureat[us].*
P.R.	*Populus Romanus.*
Q.	*Quintus, Quæstor, Quirites.*
R.	*Rabbi.*
R.P.	*Res publica. Regis Professor.*
R.R.	*Re Rustica.*
S.	*Sanctus.*
S.S.	*Sacro sanctus.*

SC.

SC.	For	*Senatus-Consultum.*
SP.		*Spurius. Spiritus Sanctus.*
Sex.		*Sextus.*
S.P.D		*Salutem plurimam dicit.*
SPQR.		*Senatus populusq; Romanus.*
T.		*Titus.*
TC.		*Tua clementia.*

And many more of that sort, which are to be found in *Francis Holiocks* Dictionary, Alphabetically set downe, in his notes of the Ancient.

Great letters also put alone, sometimes signify numbers.

I.	1.	XXIX.	29
II.	2.	XXX.	30
III.	3.	XXXI. &c.	31.
IIII. IV.	4.	XL.	40.
V.	5.	L.	50.
VI.	6.	LI. &c.	51.
VII. IIIX.	7.	LIIII. LIV.	54.
VIII. IIX.	8.	LX.	60.
IX.	9.	LXI. &c.	61.
X.	10.	LXX.	70.
XI. &c.	11.	LXXI.	71.
XIIII. XIV. &c.	14.	LXXX. XXC.	80.
XVIII. XIIX.	18.	LXXXI. &c.	81.
XIX.	19.	XC.	90.
XX.	20.	XCI. &c.	91.
XXI. &c.	21.	C.	100.
XXIIII. XXIV. &c.	24.	CI. &c.	101.
XXVIII. XXIIX.	28.		

ↀ. &c.	200.
ↀↀↀↀ. ↀↀ.	400.
D. Iↀ.	500.
DC. &c.	600.
CM.	900.
CIↀ. M. Ī.	1000.
CIↀCIↀ. MM. ĪĪ.	2000.
CIↀIↀↀ.	4000.
Iↀↀ. V̄.	5000.
Iↀↀↀ. V̄Ī.	6000.
Iↀↀↀↀ. V̄ĪĪ.	7000.
CIↀCIↀↀCIↀↀ. V̄ĪĪĪ.	8000.
CIↀↀↀIↀↀ. ĪX̄.	9000.
ↀↀIↀↀ. X̄.	10000.
ↀↀIↀↀCIↀ. X̄Ī.	11000.
ↀↀIↀↀↀↀIↀↀ. X̄X̄.	20000.
ↀↀIↀↀIↀↀↀ. XL.	40000.
Lↀↀↀ. L.	50000.
IↀↀↀↀↀIↀↀ. L̄X̄.	60000.
ↀↀIↀↀↀↀIↀↀ ↀↀↀIↀↀↀ. L̄X̄X̄X̄.	80000
ↀↀIↀↀↀↀↀIↀↀↀ. X̄C.	90000.
ↀↀↀIↀↀↀ. C̄.	100000.
I. ↀↀↀↀ. D.	500000.
ↀↀↀↀIↀↀↀↀ. M.	1000000.

Hitherto of Letters, next in order followeth a Syllable.

A Syllable, is an integrall part of a word made of Letters, unleſſe it be a Monoſyllable, when the word and the *S*yllable are of equall letters, as *a*, and *au*, may be either words or improper Syllables. *Cor* and *Pro* may either be words, or proper Syllables.

A Syllable is twofold { *Homogeneous* and *improper*. / *Heterogeneous* and *proper*.

An *Homogeneous* and improper Syllable, is that which is made of letters of the ſame kind, as of vowells, and that either of one, as in this word, *ea*, or of two at the moſt, as a *Dipthonge*. It is called a *Dipthonge*, becauſe it hath a double ſound, *viz*. of two vowels. The Latines make uſe of three *Dipthongs*, æ, made of *a*, and *e*, written two waies æ ę, *au*, of *a* and *u*, œ of *o*, and *e*.

An *Heterogeneous*, and proper ſyllable is that, which is made of letters of diverſe kinds, *viz*. of a vowell and one or more conſonants.

The longeſt latine *Syllable* containes five letters, as in this word *ſtrangulo*, leſſe by three, then the longeſt engliſh Syllable, as in this word *ſtrengthned*.

The Syllable, *ti*, when a vowell immediatly followes, is to be pronounced like, *ſi*, except firſt in the beginning of a word, as *tiara*. Secondly if *ſ* come immediatly before it, as *juſtior*. Thirdly in the *Infinitive moode* that hath a *paragogicall* addition, as *mittier*. Fourthly in borrowed words, as *Politia*, *pragmatia*.

In dividing of a word in writing, in the end and beginning of lines, the *Syllable* is never to be parted.

Thus much of a *Syllable*. Now followeth a *Word*.

A word is a perfect voice or sound, made of one or more Syllables.

The longest Latine word conteines ten syllables, moe by three, then the longest English word, as *Inexuperabilioribus*, compared with the word *Reconciliation*. In respect therefore of the number of Syllables, a Latine word is said to be tenfold: a *Monosyllable* as *sub*, a *Dissyllable*, as *super*: a *Trissyllable*, as *supero*, a *Tetrasyllable*, as *superabam*, a *Pentasyllable*, as *superabilis*, an *Hexasyllable*, as *superabilior*, an *Heptasyllable*, as *superabiliori*, an *Octosyllable*, as *superabilioribus*, a *Enneasyllable*, as *Exuperabilioribus*, and a *Decasyllable*, as *Inexsuperabilioribus*: all which (excepting the first) may be expressed by one word *Polysyllable*.

There are five affections of a word
- *Orthoepie.*
- *Orthographie.*
- *Points.*
- *Prosodie.*
- *Figure.*

Orthoepie is the way of right speaking & distinct uttering of words, according to their severall letters and syllables.

Orthographie is the right and true manner of writing words after the same forme.

The *notes* or *Points* which the Latines use about words, are twenty.

1 *Apostrophus.*
2 *Diæresis.*
3 *Hyphen.*
4
5 3 *Accents.*
6
7 An *Asterisk.*
8 An *Obelisk.*
9 A note of *citation.*
10 A note of *insertion.*
11 A note of *long time.*
12 A note of *short time.*

13 A *Parenthesis.*
14 A note of *exclamation.*
15 A note of *interrogatiõ.*
16 A note of *defect.*

17 A *Comma.*
18 *Semicolon.*
19 *Colon.*
20 *Period.*

Apostrophus is a note of cutting off of a *vowell*, in the end of a word, marked in the top thereof, as *Viden'. Audin'.*

Diæresis is the note of the division of a *Syllable* in this manner, as *evoluïisse*, for *evolvisse.*

Hyphen is a note of *Subunion*, either of two words, as *supra-humanus*, or of the connexion of two *Syllables*, made in the end of a line as ——— *malorum.*

An *accent* is a note of pronunciation, which is three fold. An *acute*, as *cónditus*, a *grave* as *maximè*, a *Circumflex* (^) which notes six things; *viz.* five things when it is above written, and one underwritten. Being above written, it notes. First a syllable long by nature, as *Românus, Alîus*, the Genitive. Secondly the taking away of a letter or syllable by *Syncope*, as *animâsse.* Thirdly the *Ablative* case of the first Declension, as *Musâ*, and *ergô*, when it is taken for *causâ.* Fourthly the Genitive case of Greeke words, whose nominative case endeth in o, & the Genitive in *ûs*, as *Sappho, Sapphûs.* Being underwritten, it notes the place where the letter, syllable or word wanting is to be inserted.

A marginall note is threefold. An *Asteriske* drawne from a starre which it seems to resemble. * An *Obeliske* drawne from a spit, which it somewhat represents ——— A note of citation, when a Letter or Figure in the text, referres you to some note in the margent.

A note of *insertion*, is [ ] a clause out of another Author interceding.

A note of *long time* is a stroke above a long *Syllable*, as *tērra*.

A note of *short time*, is halfe a circle above a short *Syllable*, open upwards, as *mĕus*.

A *Parenthesis*, is made with two halfe moones, a clause coming betweene as (*facessat adulatio.*)

A note of *Exclamation*, is signed in this manner. !

A note of *Interrogation* is signed in this manner. ?

A note of *defect* is a long line used when part of a verse or sentence is wanting in the beginning or end thereof *(* ——— *)* in the beginning as

——— *trahit suaquemq; voluptas.*

in the end as, *degeneres animos timor arguit* ———

A *Comma* is a note of breathing in a *sentence*, marked at the foot of a word thus (,)

Semicolon is a note of breathing somewhat longer, which possesseth halfe the space betweene a Comma and a Colon, and also betweene a Colon, and a Period (;)

A *Colon* is a note of longer breathing, which is wont to be marked thus. (:)

A *Period* is a full distinction, and note of longest breathing, which after a perfect sentence is thus noted. (.)

Prosody is an *affection* of a word, whereby it is rightly pronounced according to the tone and time,

Tones and *Spirits* (their use being most rare among the *Latines*) we leave to the *Greekes*, as more proper to them. The *time*, and *quantity* of *Syllables* belonging to the reason of a verse, which younger Schollers, (after that they have been sufficiently instructed in the precepts of *Rudiment* and *Regiment* being

being the integrall parts of *Grammer*) and in the direction of turning *English* into *Latine*, are to be taught and learned, here of purpose are omitted, which otherwise by very good right of method will challenge this place to themselves, as fittest for them.

The first affection of a word is Figure.

A *Figure* is that whereby a word doth decline the common, and simple forme of speaking or writing.

There be twelve *Figures* belonging to a Word.

Prothesis.
Aphæresis.
Epenthesis.
Syncope.
Paragoge.
Apocope.

Antithesis.
Metathesis.
Tmesis.
Enallage.
Hellanisme.
Archaisme.

warring (as it were) under their Emperour *Metaplasmus*, which is a certaine *transformation* of *letters* or *Syllables*.

Prothesis is the putting to of a Letter or Syllable to the beginning of a word, as *gnatus* for *natus*, *tetuli* for *tuli*.

Aphæresis is the taking away of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word, as *ruit* for *eruit*, *temnere* for *contemnere*.

Prothesis apponit capiti quod Aphæresis aufert.

Epenthesis is the interposition of a Letter or Syllable in the middle of a word, as *relligio* for *religio*. *Induperator*, for *Imperator*.

Syncope

Syncope is the taking away of a Letter or a Syllable, from the middle of a word, as *perii* for *petivi*, *mutârunt* for *mutaverunt*.

Syncope de medio tollit, quod Epenthesis infert.

Paragoge is the adding of a Letter or a Syllable to the end of a word, as *hostis* for *hosti*, *dicier* for *dici*.

Apocope is the cutting off of a Letter or Syllable, from the end of a word, as *nemon* for *nemone*, *ingeni* for *ingenii*.

Aufert Apocope finem quem dat Paragoge.

Antithesis is the putting of one Letter for another, as *olli* for *illi*, *scribundis* for *scribendis*.

Dicitur Antithesis cum litera vertitur una.

Metathesis is the misplacing of letters, as *Thymbre* for *Thymber*.

Litera censetur translata Metathesis esse.

Tmesis is when a compound word, being divided another word is put between the parts thereof: as, *Quæ me cunq; vocant terræ: Virg. Septem subjecta trioni*: for *septentrioni: id.*

Enallage here, is when the parts of speech themselves (which may then be called *Antimeria*) or those *accidents* of parts of speech whereby the lawes of lawfull structure are not violated, *are* changed or put one for the other, as

Hinc populum latè regem belloq; superbum:
regem for *regnantem*: *Virg. Jam cras hesternum consumpsimus, ecce aliud cras Pers.* an *adverbe* for a *noune*.

Respice Laerten, ut jam sua lumina condas: Ovid. sua for *ejus*; the *reciprocall* pronoune for the *Relative*: *Vivite felices quibus est fortuna peracta jam sua. Virg.* for *vestra*, the *reciprocall* pronoune for the *Possessive*.

Hellenism

Hellenisme here, is when Latine words doe follow the *declining* of greeke words as

Nec auras, nec sonitus memor: for *aurae*: *Vir. Ovid. Et multos illic Hectoras esse puto*: for *Hectores*.

Archaisme here, is when words obsolete, or their formations *antiquated* are put for usuall words: as *Pausa, vicisti castigatorem tuum, pausa* for *finis esto, Plautus. Magnas reipublicas gratia*; for *magnae reipublicae idem*.

Hitherto of the Elementary Rudiment, Now followeth the Accidentary, which is so called, because it comprehends and treats of all the accidents and appendices of every part of speech. words being diversly placed make a Speech. Speech is a sentence, compacted of the variety of words placed togither in order.

There be eight parts of Speech, neither moe nor lesse. No more, for though there be multitudes of words, and every word may be said to be a part of speech, yet they are all comprized under these eight: therefore in examining a lecture, we doe not say a word is a part of speech, but *res* is a noune, and *amo* a verbe, attributing every word to his right part of speech. No lesse, for though all the other parts of speech may be said to be *nounes*; if we respect the bare words themselves, yet if we consider the *things* signified by these *words*, there are eight severall distinct parts of Speech.

The

The parts of Speech are thus divided.

Into { *Noune*, *Pronoune*, *Verbe*, *Participle.* } { Variable, both governing, and governed.

Into { *Adverbe.*, *Conjunction.*, *Præposition.*, *Interjection.* } { Invariable, only governing, and not governed.

A Noune is a part of Speech variable, (except *Aptotes*) both governing and governed, which signifies a thing without any difference of time or person (A thing) *nihilum* doth not signify nothing at all, but comparatively: for it is compounded of *ne* and *hilum*, a litle black speck in the top of a Beane, which is a thing of no value, or (as it were) nothing: besides *Grammar* respects words more then things, (without difference of time) For an hower, day, a month, or a yeare, signify different spaces of time; but not difference of time, as a *Participle* doth, which consignifies time; that is, to gather with its owne native signification, it Implies a time, as *docens*, *docturus*: here is the native signification implyed, namely to teach; togither with the severall times of teaching, to wit, *present*, and *future*.

(Without difference of person) for though a *substantive* when it is the *Vocative case*, may seeme to be the *second person*; yet if it be well considered, it will prove otherwise: for with every such vocative case, the second person is understood, as ô man;

that

that is, ô thou man! ô men! that is, ô yee men! the second person evocating to it selfe the third; and the third person being put in the same case, by apposition to the second.

A Noune is twofold { *Substantive.* / *Aajective.*

A Noune substantive is that which stands by it selfe in sense and signification.

There be seven Accidents of a Substantive. { *Derivation.* / *Composition.* / *Number.* / *Case.* / *Gender.* / *Person.* / *Declension.* }

There are two generall divisions of a Substantive, the first into { *Proper.* / *Common.* }

A noune substantive *Proper*, is, that which is peculiar to one *Individuall*, as *Apollo*. Vnlesse it be attributed to many by *Accident*, as first when the same proper name agreeth to many men, as *Virgilii*, *Simones*, *Scipiones*. Secondly when the proper name, *metaphorically* doth note a property or similitude, as *Catones pro viris prudentibus*, *Demeæ*, *pro rusticis*! Thirdly when proper names doe take upon themselves the names of *Nations*, or *Families*, as *Latini* of *Latinus*, *Fabii* of *Fabius*.

A noune ſubſtantive Common is that which ſignifies a thing common to many, as *Homo. Lapis.*

The ſecond diviſion into { *Primitive.* *Derivative.* *Simple.* *Compound.*

A primitive Subſtantive is that, which floweth from no other, as *res.*

A Derivative Subſtantive is that which cometh from its Primitive.

A Derivative Subſtantive is fourefold { *Nominall.* *Verball.* *Adverbiall.* *Præpoſitionall.*

Nominall is twofold { *Subſtantivall.* *Adjectivall.*

A *Subſtantivall Derivative* is that which is deduced from a *ſubſtantive* Examples whereof we have in all Declenſions, as 1 *Plumbata* of *Plumbum.* 2 *Remigium* of *Remex.* 3 *Virginitas* of *Virgo.* 4 *Conſulatus* of *Conſul.* 5. *Sordities* of *Sordes.*

There are alſo other *Subſtantivall Derivatives*, as { *Patronymicks.* *Diminutives.*

A *Patronymicke* is, that which comes of the father, or of ſome perſon of the family, as *Menetiades* of *Menetius.* A *Diminutive* is, that which implyes a diminution or leſſening of a thing, as *Lapillulus* of *Lapis.*

An *Adjectivall Derivative* is that which is derived from an *Adjective*, as *Bonitas* of *Bonus.*

A *Verball Subſtantive* is that which is deduced from a Verbe, whereof be three ſorts.

Firſt ſuch as come of the *Preſent-Tenſe* in every declenſion

declenſion, as 1. *Pater* of *pateo*, *fodina* of *fodio*. 2 *Mergus* of *mergo*, *ſpeculum* of *ſpecio* 3 *Iuvenis* of *iuvo*. 4 *Fluctus* of *fluo*. 5 *Progenies* of *progigno*. Secondly ſuch as come of the Preterperfect Tenſe, as *ſedes* of *ſedi*, *Auxilium* of *auxi*. Thirdly ſuch as come of the latter ſupine in every declenſion, as *cultura* of *cultu*, of *colui* of *colo*. 2 *Exitium* of *exitu*. 3 *Cogitatio* of *cogitatu*. 4 *Auditus* of *auditu*. 5 *Cæſaries* of *cæſu*, of *cecidi*, of *cædo*.

An *Adverbiall Subſtantive*, is that which cometh of an Adverbe, as *Viciſſitudo* of *viciſſim*.

A *Præpoſitionall ſubſtantive* is that which cometh of a Prepoſition, as *Poſteri* of *Poſt*.

A ſimple Subſtantive is that which is not compounded, as *Prudentia*,

A compound ſubſtantive is that which is uſually compounded of of two ſimples.

There be 13 heads of Compound Subſtantives as.

1 One Subſtantive compounded with another, as *Aurifodina*, of *Aurum* and *fodina*.

2 With an Adjective ſet before, as *Pleniluvium*, of *Plenus* and *luna*.

3 With an Adjective ſet after, as *Reſpublica*, of *Res* and *publica*.

4 Of two Adjectives, as *Levidenſa*, of *Levis* and *Denſus*.

5 Of an Adjective and a *verbe*, as *Sacerdos* of *Sacer* and *Do*.

6 With a Verbe ſet before, as *Columba* of *Colo*, and *Lumbus*.

7 With a Verbe ſet after, as *Agricola* of *Ager* and *Colo*.

8 With a Participle, as *Iusjurandum*, of *Ius* and *jurandum*.

9 With an Adverbe ſet before, as *Bipennis* of *Bi* and *Penna*.

10 With an Adverbe ſet after, as *Virbius* of *Vir* and *Bis*.

11 Of an Adverbe and a Verbe, as *condiſcipulus*, of *Con*, and *Diſcipulus*.

13 Of a Præpoſition and a verbe, as *Antiſtes* of *Ante*. and *ſto*.

The third *Accident* of a Subſtantive is *Number*.

Number is that whereby every thing is numbred.

There be two Numbers { *Singular*. *Plurall*.

The ſingular number ſpeaketh but of one, as *Lapis* a ſtone, except it be a noune *collective*, that is, a noune of *multitude*, which being of the ſingular number, imports many, as *concio*, *grex*, *turba*, *pars* &c.

The Plurall Number ſpeaketh of moe then one, as *Lapides* ſtones, except ſome Subſtantives of the Plurall number only, that ſeeme to ſpeake of one only, as *Athenæ*, *literæ*, *induciæ*, *tenebræ*, and ſuch like.

The fourth accident of a Subſtantive is caſe.

Caſe is the ſpeciall termination of a noune.

There be ſixe Caſes in both numbers { *Nominative*. *Genitive*. *Dative*. } { *Accuſative*. *Vocative*. *Ablative*.

The *Nominative* commonly cometh before the verbe, and anſwereth to this queſtion, who, or what? as the Maſter teacheth.

The *Genitive* is commonly known by this token of,

of, and answereth to this question, whose or whereof? as the learning *of* the master.

The *Dative* is commonly known by the signe *to*, and answereth to this question, to whom or to what? as, as I give a booke *to* the Master.

The *Accusative* commonly followeth the verbe, and answereth to this question whom or what? as, I love the Master.

The *Vocative* is known commonly by calling or speaking to, as, *O Magister.*

The *Ablative* is commonly joyned with a *Præposition* serving thereto; as *of* the Master, *before* the Master.

The fift *Accident* of a Substantive is Gender.

Gender is the difference of a Noune according to its sexe.

There be five Genders of Substantives { *Masculine.* *Fœminine.* *Neuter.* *Common* of two. *Epicœne.*

A Substantive of the *Masculine Gender*, is a word of the Male kind, admitting an *Epithite*, or *adjective* of the same Gender, as, *hic vir probus*, this honest man.

A *Fœminine* Substantive is a word of the *female* kind, admitting an *Adjective* or *Epithite* of the same gender, as, *illa mulier formosa*, that faire woman.

A *Neuter* Substantive is a word of the *neuter* kind (that is neither *Masculine* nor *Fœminine*) admitting an *adjective* or *Epithite* of the same Gender, as *istud saxum durum.* That hard stone.

A *Substantive* of the *Common of two*, is a word of both kindes, admitting an *adjective* or *Epithite*, ei-

ther of the *Masculine* or *Fœminine* gender, as *meus parens*, or *mea parens est bonus* or *bona*, my Father or Mother is good. The *common of two* is of two sorts, either with *distinction of sexe*, and is only *Masculine* or *Fœminine* as the Sexe requires, as *Infans* he or she, or without distinction of Sexe: & is used *Masculine* or *Fœminine* indefinitely, as *dies serenus* or *serena* at our liberty. Which as I take it, are the same with the usuall Common of two and Doubtfull.

The *Epicæne* substantive is a promiscuous or common word, comprehending both sexes. Whereby it differs from a *Masculine*, *Fœminine*, and *Neuter* word, yet it admits but of one *Adjective* or *Epithite*, whereby it differs from a word of the *common of two*, of both sorts: as *hic passer est exiguus*, this is a little sparrow, both he and thee, *hæc Aquila est magna*, this is a great Eagle, both male and female, *hoc manciptum est miserrimum*, this is a most miserable slave, both man and woman.

Epicæne words are principally to be found amongst the names of Birds, Fishes and other Creatures, whose severall sexes cannot easily be discerned, and therefore the Latines use one word to conteine both: Besides these, we read but of five *Epicæne* words, as *Corculum*, *Mancipium*, *Scortum*, *Liberi*, *Homo*. What *Adjectives* or *Epithites Epicæne* words will admit, either *Masculine*, *Feminine*, or *Neuter* (for none are correspondent to their nature and kinde, and therefore agreeable only to the quality of words, not in the nature of things) what *Adjectives* these will admit (I say) are discovered the same way, that other common nounes are, to wit, by their declension.

The sixt *Accident* of a *noune Substantive*, is *Person*, which is one only, namely the Third.

The seaventh Accident of a Noune Substantive is, *Declensio*.

Declension is the varying of the first termination of a word into diverse other terminations, called cases.

So that the Nominative is not properly a *Case*, for *casus à cadendo*, and *Aptotes* are so called; not because they have no case at all, but none falling from the Nominative. The Nominative is also called *Rectus casus*; the first whereof is formed immediatly of the *Nominative*: the rest mediately, as from the *Genitive*. As the *Declension* declareth the terminations of every *case*, so it sheweth the *Gender* also, these foure Rules being prefixed.

1 Proper Names of the Male kind, are of the Masculine Gender.

Whereof there are nine heads.

1 The names of the Heathenish Gods, as, *Mars, Iupiter, Bacchus.*

2 The names of Angels, as, *Gabriel, Michael.*

3 The names of Men, as, *Cato, Virgilius.*

4 The names of Horses, as, *Bucephalus.*

4 The names of Dogges, as *Lælaps, Melampus.*

6 The names of Rivers, as, *Adria, Tybris*, except *Styx, Lethe*, Sequăna, Matrŏna *fæm. & Tuberum, neut.*

7 Names of months, as, *October.*

8 Names of Mountaines, as, *Mænalus*, except *Ætna, Ossa, fæm Pelion. neut.*

9 Names of Windes, as, *Libs, Notus, Auster.*

2 Proper names of the fæmale kind, are of the Fœminine Gender.

Whereof there are seaven heads:

1 Names of Heathenish Goddesses, as *Iuno, Venus.*

2 Names of Women, as *Anna, Philotis.*

3 Names of Mares, as *Podarge.*

4 Names of Bitches, as *Harpya, Nape.*

5 Names of Countries, as *Gracia, Persis,* except *Pontus.*

6 Names of Iles, as *Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.*

7 Names of Cities, as *Elis, Opus:* except *Sulmo, Agragas,* mas. *Argos, Tybur, Prænesse, Reate. Nepet. Cære.* neut. & *Anxur,* both masculine and neuter.

Names of ships are some mas. *Cyas,* some fœm. *Argo.*

3 Common names of Trees are Fœminines, as *Alnus, Cupressus, Cedrus,*

Except these that end in *aster*, which are Masculines, as *Spinaster, Oleaster,* and *Siler, Suber, Thus, Robur,* & *Acer,* which are neuters.

4 All Nounes Substantives, ending in *um,* or in *on,* whether Proper or Common, Latine or Latinized, and every Substantive undeclined, whether one word or moe; is of the Neuter Gender.

Except proper names of Men and Women, *Um Neutrum ponas, hominum si propria tollas.*

There

There be Five Declenſion.

The firſt Declenſion containes foure terminations,
- *a.* *Menſa.* Latine
- *as.* *Thomas* Latinized
- *es.* *Anchiſes* words.
- *e.* *Penelope*

To which ſome would adde ſome *Hebrew* words, as *Adam Adæ. Abraham, Abrahæ*, which may be better reduced into the Latine forme, and be thus varied after the ſecond *Declenſion*, as, *Adamus, Adami. Abrahamus Abrahami*. All Latine words are of this declenſion, that end in *a*, as *Menſa*, and ſome *Latinized* words, as *Menſa, Satrapa*, whoſe Genitive and Dative caſe ſingular doe end in *æ*, the Accuſative in *am*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in *â*, The Nominative Plurall in *æ*, the Genitive in, *arum*, the Dative in, *ûs*, the Accuſative in *as*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in, *is*, and is thus varied.

Singulariter	*Nom. Menſa*	Pluraliter	*Nom. Menſæ.*
	Gen. Menſæ.		*Gen. Menſarum.*
	Dat. Menſæ		*Dat. Menſis.*
	Acc. Menſam.		*Acc. Menſas.*
	Voc. Menſa.		*Voc. Menſæ.*
	Abl. Menſâ.		*Abl. Menſis.*

The Latines in imitation of the Greeks, ſometimes doe uſe *as*, in the Genitive caſe ſingular, for *æ*, as *Paterfamilias, Latonas, Terras, Vivas*.

The Ancients doe uſe (*ai*) in the Genitive caſe ſingular, for (*æ*) as *pictai aulai, æquai, &c.* In the Dative and Ablative caſe Plurall, ſome Latine words make, *is*, and *abus*: ſome *abus* only, which are comprehended in this *Diſtich*.

Filia, Nata, Anima, is, faciunt, & abus; at, abus, Tantum ambæ, atq; Duæ, liberta, equa, ſie Dea, Mula.

Thoſe Nounes that end in *As*, *Es*, or, *E*, are Greeke nounes originally, and are thus varied.

Singulariter	*Nom. Æneas.*	*Nom. Anchiſes.*
	Gen. Æneæ.	*Gen. Anchiſæ.*
	Dat. Æneæ.	*Dat. Anchiſæ.*
	Acc. Æneam v. an	*Acc. Anchiſen.*
	Voc. Ænea.	*Voc. & Abl. Anchiſe*, v *Anchiſâ.*
	Abl. Æneâ.	

Nom. Penelope.
Gen. Penelopes.
Dat. Penelope.
Acc. Penelopen.
Voc. Penelope.
Abl. Penelope.

Common Nounes alſo of the ſame terminations, as *Satrapas*, *Athletes*, *Epitome*, are thus declined in the ſingular number, and in the plurall like nounes in, *a*.

This Declenſion doth embrace all Genders, belonging to a noune *Subſtantive*, except the *Neuters*, as *Poeta*, Maſculine: *Capra*, fœminine: *Talpa*, common of two: *Aquila*, Æpicœne. But principally the Fœminine gender, whereof all that end in, *a*, are except theſe that follow.

1 Common names of mens offices, and imployments, as *Scriba*, *Aſſecla*, *Scurra*, *Rabula*, *lixa*, *laniſta*, *&c.* which are maſculine.

2 Thoſe which come of *Greeke* Nounes of the firſt Declenſion, as *Satrapa*, *Athleta*, *Poeta*. &c. except *Charta*, *Gauſapa*, *Margarita*, *Cataraſta*, & *Catapulta*, & *Tiara*, fœminine.

3 *Talpa*, and *Dama*, which are of the Common of two, without distinction of Sexe.

4 Those nounes that are compounded of Verbs, as *Agricola*, of *ager* and *colo* are of the Common of two. Except *Puerpera*, of *Puer* and *pario*, which is fœminine.

5 *Verna*, which is the Common of two, with distinction of Sexe, and *Pincerna*.

The second Declension containes eight terminations,

Which are compiled in this Hexameter.

TemplUM, AnnUS, VIR, ApER, SatUR, OrpheUS, IliON, ArgOS.

All that end in *ER, IR, UR, UM, US*, of this declension, are Latine words, for the most part, whose Genitive case singular, endeth in, *i*, the Dative in *o*, the Accusative in, *um*, the Vocative for the most part like the Nominative, the Ablative in, *o*. The Nominative plurall in, *i*, the Genitive in, *ōrum*, the Dative in, *is*, the Accusative in, *os*, the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in, *is*, and is thus varied.

Singulariter.		Pluraliter	
Nom.	*Magister.*	Nom	*Magistri.*
Gen	*Magistri.*	Gen	*Magistrorum.*
Dat.	*Magistro.*	Dat	*Magistris.*
Acc.	*Magistrum.*	Acc	*Magistrōs.*
Voc.	*Magister.*	Voc.	*Magistri.*
Abl.	*Magistro.*	Abl.	*Magistris.*

Cautions.

1 Here is to be noted, that when the Nominative endeth in *us*, the Vocative shall end in, *e*, as Nom. *Dominus*, Voc. ô, *Domine*, except *Deus*, that maketh ô *Deus*, (whose nominative plurall, is both *Dei* and

Dii)

Dii) and *filius*, *genius*. which make, *fili*, *geni*.

2 When the nominative endeth in *ius*, (if it be a proper name of a man) the vocative shall end in, *i*, as *Virgilius*, *Virgili*. *Terentius*, *Terenti*.

3 These nounes make their Vocative in, *e*, or *us*, *Agnus*, *Lucus*, *chorus*, *fluvius*, *populus* people, *quercus*, *laurus*, *vulgus*: but the three last in a diverse respect from the former: for *quercus* and *laurus* doe make their Vocative in *e*, or in *us*, in respect they are nounes of the second and fourth Declension: and *vulgus* makes, *e*, as it is a masculine, and *us*, as it is a Neuter, and the five first by an *archaisme*.

4 All nounes of the Neuter gender, of what Declension soever they be, have the Nominative, the Accusative, & the Vocative alike in both numbers, and in the Plurall number they end all in, *a*, as in Example.

Singulariter	Pluraliter
Nom. Regnum.	*Nom. Regna.*
Gen. Regni.	*Gen. Regnorum.*
Dat. Regno	*Dat. Regnis.*
Acc. Regnum.	*Acc. Regna.*
Voc. Regnum.	*Voc. Regna.*
Abl. Regno.	*Abl. Regnis.*

Except *Ambo*, and *Duo*, which for methods sake are placed and varied amongst the nounes *Adjectives*.

Those that end in *Eus*, or *Os*, are Greeke words originally, and are varied after these examples.

Singulariter
Nom. Orpheus.
Gen. Orphei, vel *Orpheos.*
Dat. Orphei.
Acc. Orphea, sometimes *Orpheon.*
Voc. Orpheu.
Abl. Orpheo.

Some

Some greeke words, contracted in, *us*, make their Vocatiue, in, *u*, as, *Pentheus*, *Pentheu*. *Oedipus Oedipu*.

Singulariter
Nom. Ilion.
Gen. Ilii.
Dat. Ilio.
Acc. Ilion.
Voc. Ilion.
Abl. Ilio.

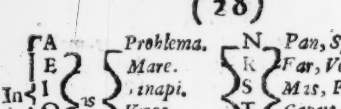
Likewiſe thoſe in, *os*, as *Delos*, *Logos*. Save that they make their Vocative in, *s*, like regular Latine nounes in, *us*.

Common Nounes alſo of the ſame terminations, are thus declined, in the Singular number,, and in the Plurall like nounes of the ſame Gender.

This Declenſion doth embrace all Genders, belonging to a noune Subſtantive, as *Annus*, maſc. *Cedrus*, fæm. *Pelagus*, neut. *Pampinus*, common of two, not with, but without diſtinction of Sexe. *Cætus*, Epicæne. But principally the Maſculine: for all that end in, *R*, except *Diameter*, and, *us*, alſo, are Maſculines: 1 Except, *Humus*, *Domus*, *Colus*, *Vannus* which are fæminines: ſo alſo are Greeke nounes in, *us*, coming of Greeke nounes in, *os*, as *Papyrus*, *Antidotus*, *Coſtus*, *&c.* 2 Except ſome Neuters as, *Virus*, *Pelagus*, & *Vulgus*, ſometimes maſcul. and ſometimes neuter. 3 Except ſome of the Common of two, without diſtinction of Sexe as, *Pampinus*, *Lecythus*, *Phaſelus*, *Atomus*, *Groſſus*, *Pharus*, *Paradiſus*, *Alvus*.

The third Declenſion containes eleven terminations: foure vowells and ſeaven Conſonants: two Greeke, and nine Latine.

In



A, and I, are Greeke terminations, all the reſt Latine.

The Genitive caſe of all which, after the Latine forme endeth in, *is*: the Dative in, *i*: the Accuſative moſt commonly in, *em*, and ſometimes in *im*, and ſometimes in both: the Vocative like the Nominative: the Ablative in, *e*, ſometimes in *i*, and ſometimes in both. The Nominative Plurall in, *es*: the Genitive in, *um*, and ſometimes in *ium*: the Dative in, *bus*: the Accuſative in, *es*, the Vocative like the Nominative: the Ablative in *bus*.

Singulariter.	Pluraliter
Nom. Lapis.	Nom. Lapides.
Gen. Lapidis.	Gen. Lapidum.
Dat. Lapidi.	Dat. Lapidibus.
Acc. Lapidem.	Acc. Lapides.
Voc. Lapis.	Voc. Lapides.
Abl. Lapide.	Abl Lapidibus.

Singulariter.	Pluraliter
Nom. Corpus.	Nom. Corpora.
Gen. Corporis.	Gen. Corporum.
Dat. Corpori.	Dat. Corporibus.
Acc. Corpus.	Acc. Corpora.
Voc. Corpus.	Voc. Corpora.
Abl. Corpore.	Abl Corporibus.

Cautions.

Theſe ſeaven Nounes make the Accuſative in *im*, which only for memories ſake we have ſet downe in this rythme. *Vim, Navim, Sitim, Tuſſim, Charybdim, Magudarim, & Amuſſim.*

Theſe twelve Nounes make the Accuſative caſe in, *im*, or *em*, *Im*, *em*, doe vary, *Febris, Buris, Pelvis, Puppis, & Securis, Torquis, Turris, Aqualis, Ravis, & Bipennis, Reſtis, Clavis.*

Neuters in, *e*, except *Gauſape, Præſepe*, and theſe proper Nounes, *Soracte, Præneste, Reate.* Likewiſe Neuters in, *al*, and *ar*, except, *Far, Hepar, Jubar, Nectar*, which make the Ablative in, *e*, and *Par*, with his compounds, that make, *e*, and *i*. Alſo names of Months in, *is*, and *er*, with *Pugil*, and *Strigilis*: and laſtly thoſe that have the Accuſative in *im*, alone; doe make the Ablative in, *i*, only.

Thoſe Nounes that have the Accuſative caſe in, *em*, or *im*: and theſe Subſtantives, *Ignis, Amnis, Anguis, Supellex, Unguis, Vectis*; likewiſe Adjectives whoſe Neuters end not in, *e*, except *Pauper, Degener, Uber, Soſpes, Hoſpes*, which make, *e*, only, and laſtly nounes of the Comparative degree, doe make the Ablative caſe in, *e*, or, *i*.

Neuters whoſe Ablative caſe ſingular endeth in, *i*, only: or in *e*, and *i*, doe make the Nominative Plurall in, *ia*; as *Mollia, Duplicia*: except *Uber, Aplustra*, or *Aplustria*. The Ablative caſe in, *i*, only, or in, *e*, and *i*, doe make the Genitive Caſe Plurall in, *ium*, as *Navi, Navium*; *puppe vel puppi, puppium*: except Nounes of the Comparative degree (ſave only *Plurium*) alſo beſides theſe, *supplicum, Complicum, Strigilum, Artificum, Vigilum, Veterum, Memorum, Pugilum.*

When

When the Nominative Case singular, is terminated with two Consonants, the Genitive plurall doth end in, *ium*, as *Urbs Urbium*: except *Hyemum, Principum, Participum, Forcipum, Inopum, Cælibum, Aucupum.*

Where the Nominative and Genitive case singular, are *parisyllabicall*; the Genitive Plurall endeth in, *ium:* as *Collis, Menſis: Collium, Menſium:* to which we may adde theſe *Litium, Virium, Salium, Manium, Penatium*, except theſe, *Canum, Panum, Vatum, Iuvenum, Opum, Apum.*

As, makes, *Aſſium: Mas, Marium: Vas, Vadis, Vadum: Nox, noctium: Nix, nivium: Os, oſſium: Faux, Faucium: Mus, Murium: Caro, Carnium: Cor, Cordium: Alituum ab Ales aſſumpto u. Bovum*, is irregular, as alſo *Bobus, vel Bubus*, in the Dative and Ablative Case.

Thoſe that are varied after the *Greeke* manner, make the Genitive case singular in, *os*, the Dative in *i*, the Accuſative in, *a*, the Vocative ſometimes in, *i*, caſting away, *s*, in the Nominative; the Ablative in, *e*, as

Singulariter
- *Nom. Phyllis.*
- *Gen. Phyllidos.*
- *Dat. Phyllidi.*
- *Acc. Phyllida.*
- *Voc. Phylli.*
- *Abl. Phyllide.*

Thoſe that make the *Genitive* in, *os*, pure, that is, having a vowell before, *os*, make the Accuſative in, *in*; as *Tethys, Tethyos, Tethyn: Metamorphoſis, Metamorphoſin.*

Thoſe that make the Genitive as well in, *Os*, im-

pure

pure (that is, having a consonant before, *os*, pure; make the Accusative in, *a*, and *in*, as *Paris, Paridos, & Parios; Parida, & Parin.*

This Declension conteines all Genders incident to a noune Substantive. The Masculine as *Sanguis*: the Fœminine, as *Virtus*: Neuter as, *onus*: Common of two, as *Infans*: with distinction of Sexe, as *Bubo*: the *Epicœne*, as *Vulpes*.

The Genders of the Nounes of this Declension, are knowne by the Genitive case: to which purpose tend these three speciall Rules.

1 **All Nounes not increasing in the Genitive Case, are of the Fœminine Gender.** Except. 1 These Masculines, *Verres, Natalis, Aqualis, Orbis, Cassis, Caulis, Collis, Follis, Mensis, Ensis, Fustis, Panis, Penis, Crinis, Ignis, Cassis, Fascis, Torris, Piscis, Unguis, Vermis, Vectis, Postis, & Axis*: and the compounds of *As*, a pound weight, as *Centussis, Semissis*. 2 Nounes in, *er*, as *Pater*, which are Masculines: but *Mater*, is of the Fœminine: and *Linter*, the Common of two. 3 Nounes in, *e*, as *Mare, Rete*; and Greeke nounes in, *es*, as *Cacoethes*, which are Neuters. 4 Some of the Common of two; as, *Finis, Clunis, Restis, Corbis, Torquis, Anguis, Senex, Exterris, Patruelis, Perduellis, Affinis, Iuvenis, Funis, Sentis, Civis, Testis, Canis, Hostis, Amnis*.

2 **All Nounes increasing long in the last Syllable save one of the Genitive case, are Fœminines: as *Virtus Virtutis: Pietas, Pietatis.***

Except 1 The Monosyllables, *Sol, Ren, Splen, As, Bes, Pres, Glis* a Dormouse, *Mos, Flos, Ros, Tros, Mus*

Mus, Dens, Mons, Pons, Fons, Seps, a Serpent, *Rex,* which are Masculines. 2 Nounes in, *n,* of three Syllables, as, *Lichen, Delphin, Halcyon,* which are likewise Masculines (but *Siren* is of the Fœminine.) 3 Nounes in, *o,* signifying a bodily Substance, as *Leo, &c.* to which may be added *Senio, Ternio, Sermo:* which are *Masculines.* 4 Nounes in *er, or, & os,* as *Crater, Conditor, Heros,* Masculi. Except *Socer, Vxor,* Fœmin. and *Autor,* the Common of two without distinction of Sexe. 5 *Torrens, Nefrens, Oriens, Bidens* a Dung-forke, and other compounds of *Dens*: and *Gigas, Elephas, Adamas, Gramas, Primas &c. Tapes, Labes, Magnes,* and the parts of a pound, as *Sextans, Trions, Quadrans, Quincunx, Bes, Dodrans, Deunx.* So also *Hydrops, Thorax, Vervex, Phœnix, Spadix, Volvox, Bombyx:* silke worme, which are Masculines. 6 These Monosyllables, *Mel, Fel, Lac, Far, Ver, Cor,* As, *Vas, Vasis, os, oris: os, ossis;* also *Rus, Thus, Ius, Crus, Pus, & Halec:* as also Nounes *polysyllable,* in *al,* and *ar,* as *Capital, Laquear:* which are Neuters. 7 These Nounes, *Parens, Hæres, Infans, Adolescens, Index, Exlex, Bifrons,* (which five latter are sometimes Adjectives) *Custos, Cliens, Sacerdos, Python, Serpens, Bubo, Rudens, Perdix, Lynx, Limax, Stirps,* a stumpe of a tree; *Calx,* the heele; and *Dies;* Which are the Common of two, without distinction of Sexe: But *Dies* in the plurall number is Masculine only.

3 All Nounes increasing short in the last syllable save one, of the Genitive case are of the Masculine Gender, as, *Sanguis, Sanguinis: Sal, Salis :* sometimes Neuter,

Ya,

Vas, Vadis: Mas, Maris: Pes, Pedis, Grex, Gregis: Phryx, Phrygis: Lar, Laris.

Except 1 Fœminines in, *do*, and *go*, having moe then two Syllables; to which you may adde *Grando, Virgo, Compes, Teges, Seges, Arbor, Hyems, Bacchar, Mulier, Syndon, Icon, Amazon, Pecus, pecudis, Forfex, Pellex, Carex, Suppellex, Appendix, Histrix, Coxendix, Filix.* also words in, *as*, and *is*, derived from Greke Nounes, as *Lampas, Iaspis:* But *Harpago, harpaginis*, is the Masculine. 2 Nounes signifying a thing without life, and ending either in, *a*, as *Problema*; *en*, as *Omen*; *ar*, as *Iubar*; *ur*, as *Iecur*; *us*, as *Onus*; *put*, as *Occiput*; which are Neuters (except *Pecten, Furfur*, which are Masculines; and *Guttur*, sometimes Masculine) Also these Nounes are *Neuters, Cadaver, Verber, Iter, Suber, Tuber*, a Mushroome, *Uber, Gingiber, Laser, Cicer, Piper, Papaver, Sicer, Siler, Spinter*, alto *Marmor, Æquor, & Ador, & Pecus, pecoris*, but *Papaver* is sometimes Masculine. 3 These of the Common of two, *Scrobs, Grus, Cardo, Margo, Cinis, Obex, Pulvis, Adeps, Forceps, Pumex, Ramex, Anas, Imbrex*, also *Culex, Natrix, Dux, Bos, Sus, Vigil, Pugil, Præsul. Martyr, Ligur, Arcas, Antistes, Miles, Interpres, Comes, Hospes, Præses, Ales, Exul, Princeps* (which three latter are sometimes Adjectives) *Auceps, Eques. Obses*, and some Nounes compounded of Verbes, as, *Index, Conjux, Vindex, Opifex, &c.*

The Fourth Declension hath two terminations, {*US*, *U*} as {*Manus*. *Genu*.

All Nounes that end in, *us*, are of the Masculine

Gender (except *Domus*, *Colus*, *Ficus*, a fig: *Acus*, *Porticus*, *Tribus*, *Socrus*, *Nurus*, *Manus*, *Anus*, which are Fœminines) and are of the Fourth Declension, when the Genitive case singular endeth in, *us:* the Dative in, *ui:* the Accusative in *um:* the Vocative like the Nominative, the Ablative in, *u:* The Nominative plurall in *us:* the Genitive in, *um:* the Dative in, *ibus:* the Accusative in *us:* the Vocative like the Nominative: the Ablative in *ibus*.

And are thus varied,

Singulariter.		Pluraliter.	
Nom.	Motus.	Nom.	Motus.
Gen.	Motus.	Gen.	Motuum.
Dat.	Motui	Dat.	Motibus.
Acc.	Motum.	Acc.	Motus.
Voc.	Motus.	Voc.	Motus.
Abl.	Motu.	Abl.	Motibus.

Those that end in, *u*, are invariable in the singular: and therefore Neuters: but in the Plurall they be thus varied.

Pluraliter	
Nom.	Genua.
Gen	Genuum.
Dat.	Genibus.
Acc.	Genua.
Voc.	Genua.
Abl.	Genibus.

Cautions.

Eleaven Nounes of this Declension, make, *ubus*, in

in the Dative and Ablative Plurall, which are comprehended in this Distich.

Nec in ubus; Ficus, Portus, Partus, Specus, Arcus,
Sic Lacus, atq; Veru, sic Quercus, Acus Tribus, Artus.

Iesus, is an irregular word, whose Accusative case endeth in, *um*, and the rest in, *u*.

The Fift Declension hath only one termination, namely, *ES*, as *Facies*. Whose Genitive and Dative case singular doe end in, *ei*; The Accusative in, *em*; the Vocative like the Nominative; the Ablative in, *e*; The Nominative plurall in, *es*; the Genitive in, *erum*; the Dative in, *ebus*; the Accusative in, *es*; the Vocative like the Nominative; the Ablative in, *ebus*.

And are thus Varied.

Singulariter		Pluraliter	
Nom.	*Facies.*	*Nom.*	*Facies.*
Gen.	*Faciei.*	*Gen.*	*Facierum.*
Dat.	*Faciei.*	*Dat.*	*Faciebus.*
Acc.	*Faciem.*	*Acc.*	*Facies.*
Voc.	*Facies.*	*Voc.*	*Facies.*
Abl.	*Facie.*	*Abl.*	*Faciebus.*

All Nounes of this Declension are Fœminines, except *Dies*, which is of the Common of two, in the Singular, and Masculine in the Plurall: and his compound *Meridies*; which is Masculine only.

A Nounе Adjective is that to which something is to be added, to expresse it's signification.

There be seaven Accidents of a Noune Adjective,
- Derivation.
- Compoſition.
- Number.
- Caſe.
- Gender.
- Declenſion.
- Compariſon.

There be four Diviſions of a Noune Adjective.

Whereof the first is into,
- Proper, as, *Gradivus*, which is of the Maſculine termination only, as peculiar to *Mars*.
- Common, as, *Bonus*.

The Second into
- *Primitive.*
- *Derivative.*
- *Simple.*
- *Compound.*

A *Primitive* Adjective is that which followeth from no other word as, *Albus*.

A *Derivative* is that which cometh of its *Primitive*.

Which is ſixe fold
- *Nominall.*
- *Verball.*
- *Gerundivall.*
- *Participiall.*
- *Adverbiall.*
- *Præpoſitionall.*

1 *Nominall* is two fold.
- *Subſtantivall.*
- *Adjectivall.*

A *Subſtantivall* Adjective is that which is deduced from a Subſtantive either
- *Generally*, as *Cordatus* of *Cor*. or
- *Particularly*, which is ſixe fold.

1 *Diminutive* as, *Stultulus* of *Stultus*.

2 *Poſſeſſive*, as *Achilleus* of *Achilles*: *Herilis* of *Herus*.

3 *Patriall* as, *Oxonienſis* of *Oxonium*: *Glevenſis* of *Glevum*.

4 *Gentile* as, *Anglicus* of *Anglus*.

5 *Materiall* as, *Aureus*, of *Aurum*.

6 *Locall* as, *Hortenſis* of *Hortus*.

An *Adjectivall* is derived of an Adjective as, *Parilis* of *Par*.

A *Verball* Adjective is derived of a Verbe, which is fourefold. Thoſe which come. 1 Of the Preſent Tenſe, as *Petax* of *Peto*. 2 Of the Præterimperfect tenſe, as *Flebilis*, of *Flebam*. 3 Of the Preterperfect Tenſe as, *Fluxilis* of *Fluxi*. 4 Of the latter Supine, as *Deletilis* of *Deletu*, *Fictilis* of *Fictu*.

A *Gerundivall* Adjective is made of a Gerund. If it be the Genitive caſe, (for it is only uſed in the *Oblique* Caſes) it is made of the *Gerund* in, *Di*. if the Dative, or Ablative of the Gerund in, *Do*: if the Accuſative; of the Gerund in, *Dum*: which many times being the ſame in termination and ſignification; are only thus diſtinguiſhed. *viz*. That the Gerund is alwaies the word governing; and the Gerundivall Adjective alwaies the word governed. It is differenced alſo from a *Participiall*, or *Participle* of the Future in, *Dus*; becauſe that hath alwaies the Active, or Active like; but theſe alwaies the Paſſive ſignification.

A *Participiall* Adjective is that which comes of a Participle. Now Participles are changed into Nounes foure waies. 1 By *Regiment*, when they governe the Caſe, that the Verbe whereof they come, cannot governe: and that is incident only to the

Participle of the Preſent Tenſe, and the Prætet Tenſe as, *Alienl Appetens, Profuſus ſui.* 2 By Compariſon, when they admit the degrees thereof, which likewiſe is incident to the ſame two Participles as, *Amans, Amantior, Amantiſſimus. Doctus, Doctior, Doctiſſimus.* 3 By *Compoſition*, when they be compounded with ſuch a word, that the Verbe they come of, cannot be compounded withall which alſo is incident to the ſame two Participles as, *Innocens, Semiſepultus.* 4 By looſing their ſignification, which is incident only to three, *Preſens, Præter*, and *Future* in *Dus*, as *Amans tui*, deſirous of thee. *Vir Laudatus* or *Laudandus*, A man praiſable, or worthy to be praiſed.

An *Adverbiall* Adjective is that which flowes from an Adverbe, as *Hodiernus* of *Hodie.*

A *Prepoſitionall* Adjective, is that which flowes from a Prepoſition as, *Externus* of *Extra.*

A *Simple* Adjective is that which is not compounded as, *Prudens.*

A *Compound* is that which is compounded of two *Simples*, whereof there are foureteene heads.

1 With a Subſtantive ſet before as, *Armipotens* of *Arma* and *potens.*

2 With a Subſtantive put after as, *Magnanimus*, of *Magnus* and *Animus.*

3 Of two Subſtantives as, *Plumipes*, of *Pluma* and *Pes.*

4 Of a Subſtantive and a Verbe as, *Frugifer*, of *Frugis* and *fero.*

5 Of one Adjective with another as, *Semiplenus. Sacroſanctus.*

6 With a Pronoune as, *Tantundem*, of *Tantus* and *Idem.*

7 With a Verbe as, *Sacrilegus*, of *Sacer* and *Lego*.

8 With an Adverbe as, *Nonnullus* of *Non* and *Nullus*.

9 Of an Adverbe and a Substantive as, *Bilinguis*, of *Bis* and *Lingua*.

10 Of an Adverbe and a Verbe as, *Benevolus*, of *Bene* and *Volo*.

11 With a Præposition as, *Immaturus*, of *In*, and *Maturus*.

12 Of a Præposition and a Substantive as, *Inermus*, of *In* and *Arma*.

13 Of a Præposition and a Verbe as, *Superſes* of *Super* and *ſto*.

14 Of a Præposition and a Participle as, *Ignotus*, of *In* and *notus*.

The third Division of an Adjective, which shewes the Gender.

Every Adjective being terminated like one of these ten, as

SoleRS, *excelleNS*, *locupleS*, *ſublimiS*, *& audAX*, *belligER*, *atq; ancePS*, *SatUR*, *AlgidVS*, *atq; RavennAS*. Is either of one, two, or three terminations. If of one, it is the Common of three: If of two; the former is the Common of two, and the latter the Neuter: If of three, the first is the masculine, the second the Fœminine, the third the Neuter in all Cases.

Those two *Accidents* of an Adjective, Number and Case are omitted here, because they are the same with a Noune Substantive.

For the Declension of a noune Adjective; you

must know that Adjectives of three terminations, are varied after the First and Second Declension of Substantives: in the Fæminine gender after the first: the Masculine and Neuter after the second, in this manner.

Singulariter	*Nom. Bonus, na, num.*	Pluraliter	*Nom. Boni, næ, na.*
	Gen. Boni, næ, ni.		*G. Bonorũ, arũ, orũ.*
	Dat. Bono, næ, no.		*Dat. Bonis.*
	Acc. Bonum, am, um.		*Acc. Bonos, as, a.*
	Voc. Bone, na, um.		*Voc. Boni, æ, a.*
	Abl. Bono, na, no.		*Abl. Bonis.*

In which manner are declined, *Unus, Totus, Solus, Ullus, Nullus, Uter, Neuter, Alius, Alter*; saving that they make their Genitive in, *ius*, and their Dative in, *i*, and that the fixe latter want the Vocative case: and *Alius* makes *Aliud* in the Neuter Gender of the Nominative and Accusative case singular, *Ambo*, and *Duo*, be irregular, except in the Genitive case, being thus varied.

Pluraliter	*Nom. Ambo, bæ, bo.*	
	Gen. Amborum, barum, borum.	
	Dat. Ambobus, babus, bobus.	
	Acc. Ambos, bas, bo.	
	Voc. Ambo, bæ, bo.	
	Abl. Ambobus, babus, bobus.	

Adjectives of one or two terminations, are varied after the third Declension of Substantives, in this wise.

Singulariter

Singulariter	*Nom.* Fælix.	Pluraliter	*Nom.* Fælices, & Fælicia.
	Gen. Fælicis.		*Gen.* Fælicium.
	Dat. Fælici.		*Dat.* Fælicibus.
	Acc. Fælicem, & Fælix.		*Acc.* Fælices, & Fælicia.
	Voc. Fælix.		*Voc.* Fælices & Fælicia.
	Abl. Fælice, & Fælici.		*Abl.* Fælicibus.

After the ſame manner may be declined *Ravennas, Hic, hæc, & hoc Ravennas. &c.*

Singulariter	*Nom.* Triſtis, & Triſte.	Pluraliter	*Nom.* Triſtes, & Triſtia.
	Gen. Triſtis.		*Gen.* Triſtium.
	Dat. Triſti.		*Dat.* Triſtibus.
	Acc. Triſtem. & Triſte.		*Acc.* Triſtes, & Triſtia.
	Voc. Triſtis, & Triſte.		*Voc.* Triſtes, & Triſtia.
	Abl. Triſti.		*Abl.* Triſtibus.

The fourth Diviſion is concerning the laſt *Accident* of an Adjective, *viz*, Comparſon.

Every Adjective is either { *Compared*, or Not *Compared*.

Adjectives whoſe ſignification cannot be increaſed or diminiſhed, are not Compared, as, *Omnis, Nullus*, but all others may either *Regularly*, or *irregularly*.

There be three degrees of Compariſon, the { *Poſitive*. *Comparative*. *Superlative*.

The

The *Positive* betokens the thing absolutely without excesse as, *Durus*. hard.

The *Comparative* somewat exceedeth its Positive in signification, as, *Durior*, Harder, or more hard.

The *Superlative* exceedeth its Positive in the highest degree as, *Durissimus* hardest, or most hard.

1 *Comparison* is { *Regular.* or *Irregular.*

Regular Comparison is when the Comparative cometh of the first case of its Positive, that ends in, *i*: by putting thereto, *or*, and *us*: and the Superlative of the same, by putting thereto, *s*, and *simus*, as of *Duri*, *Durior*, *Durius*, and *Durissimus*.

Irregular Comparison is that which swerveth from this Rule. Of which kind of Comparison are,

1 These. *Bonus*, *Melior*, *Optimus* *Malus*. *Pejor*, *Pessimus*. *Magnus*, *Major*, *Maximus*. *Parvus*, *minor*, *minimus*. *Nequam*, *Nequior*, *Nequissimus*. *Citra*, *citerior*, *citimus*. *Intra*, *interior*, *intimus*. *Infra*, *inferior*, *infimus*, *vel* Imus. *Extra*, *exterior*, *extimus*, & *extremus*. *Supra*, *superior*, *supremus*, & *summus*. *Post*, *Posterior*, *Postremus*. *Ultra*, *ulterior*, *ultimus*. *Propè*, *propior proximus*.

2 Those whose Positives end in, *er*, which make the Superlative, by putting to, *rimus*, as *Pulcher*, *Pulcherrimus*.

3 These five, ending in, *lis*, which make the Superlative, by changing, *is*, into *limus*, as *Humilis*, *Humillimus*. *Similis*, *Simillimus*. *Facilis*, *Facillimus*. *Gracilis*, *Gracillimus*. *Agilis*, *Agillimus*. *Docilis*, *Docillimus*.

4 They which are compounded of, *Dico*, *Loquor*, *Volo*, *Facio*, as *Maledicus*, *Maledicentior*, *Maledicentissimus*. *Magniloquus*, *Magniloquentior*, *Magniloquen-*

loquentiſſimus. Benevolus, Benevolentior, Benevolentiſſimus. Magnificus, Magnificentior, Magnificentiſſimus.

5 Thoſe that end in, *us*, pure, as *Pius, magis pius, maximè pius.* Seldome *Piiſſimus.*

6 Participialls in, *Dus*, as *Colendus, magis Colendus, maximè Colendus.* Seldome *Colendiſſimus.*

7 All other Adjectives wanting a Regular Comparison, and having a ſignification, which admits an increaſe, with the ſignes *more*, and *moſt*, and a decreaſe, with the ſignes *leſſe* or *leaſt*, which are compared by *magis* and *Maximè*; *Minùs* and *Minimè*: as *Rudis, magis Rudis, maximè Rudis: Memor, minùs Memor, minimè Memor.* So *Vulgaris, Gelidus, Vetulus, Claudus, Criſpus, Calvus, Cavus, &c.*

2 Comparison is { *Defective.* or *Abuſive.*

Thoſe Adjectives are Deficient in Comparison, which want either their Comparative or Superlative degree.

Adjectives wanting their Comparative, are theſe, *Inclytus, atq; Sacer, Falſus, Fides, Merituſq;. Nuper, & Invitus, Novus, & juris-Conſultus.* To which adde, *Penè, Peniſſimus.*

Adjectives wanting the Superlative, are theſe. *Longinquus, Iuvenis, Declivis, & Infinitus, Atq; Senex, Ingens, Adoleſcens, atq; Propinquus. Opimus, Opimior, Iniſter, Iniſterior:* to which adde *Ante, Anterior*, and verballs in, *bilis*, as, *Formidabilis, Amabilis*, whoſe Superlative *Amabiliſſimus*, is ſometimes uſed in *Tully.*

Abuſive Comparison is when other words are Compared,

Compared, as *Neronior* of *Nero*, a Substantive. *Ipſiſſimus* of *Ipſe* or *Ipſus*, a Pronoune, &c.

OF HETEROCLITES.

Deficit, aut variat Heteroclita vox, vel abundat.

An Heteroclite is that which doth ſwerve from the common manner of declining.

Of which there be three ſorts { *Variants.* *Defectives.* *Reaundants.*

1 *Variants* are of two ſorts { 1 Thoſe that vary in *Gender* only. 2 Thoſe that vary in *Gender* and *Declenſion.*

Variants in *Gender* are of foure ſorts. 1 Neuters in the ſingular number, and Maſculine and Neuter in the Plurall, as, *Raſtrum*, *Frænum*, *Filum*, *Capiſtrum*. 2 Neuters in the ſingular number, and Maſculines only in the Plurall, as, *Argos*, *Cœlum*. 3 Maſculines in the ſingular number, and Neuters in the Plurall, as *Menalus*, *Dindymus*, *Iſmarus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*, *Maſſicus*, *Gargarus*. 4 Maſculine in the Singular, and Maſculine and Neuter in the Plurall as, *Sibilus*, *Iocus*, *Locus*, *Avernus*.

Thoſe that vary Gender and Declenſion, are Neuters of the Second Declenſion, in the Singular: and Fœminines of the firſt in the Plurall, as, *Nundinum*, *Epulum*, *Balneum*, which ſometimes hath *Balnea* in the Plurall number.

Defectives alſo are of two ſorts.

Defective

Defectives { in *Case.* / in *Number.*

Defectives in caſe are of 5 ſorts { *Aptots.* / *Monoptots.* / *Diptots.* / *Triptots.* / *Tetraptots.*

Aptots, are thoſe which have no caſe varying from the Nominative, as theſe Subſtantives. *Nihil, Pondo, ſemis, tempe, gummi, Opus, uſus* neede: *finapi, gelu, cornu, veru, genu*, (whereof the three laſt are *Aptots* in the ſingular number only) *Manna, Heb. Chaos. gr. Inſtar.* And theſe Adjectives alſo *Fas, Nefas, Frugi: Semi*, (never found but in compoſition) *cujuſmodi, hujuſmodi, Illiuſmodi, Iſtiuſmodi. Tot, Quot*, and all Nounes of number, from three to an hundred. Likewiſe *Præſtò*.

Monoptots are thoſe that have but one Caſe, varying from the Nominative as, *Natu, Iuſſu, Injuſſu, Aſtu, Promptu, Permiſſu, Inficias, Forte* of *Fores, Suppetias* of *Suppetiæ, Ergô (pro Cauſâ)* of *Ergon, gr. Tantilem* or *Tantundem*, Adjective, *Pluris* of *Plus*, which is a whole word in the Plurall Number.

Diptots are thoſe that have two Caſes varying from the Nominative, as *Spontis, Sponte: Repetundarum, Repetundis. Iugeris, Iugere: Vicem, vice:* whereof the two latter have all caſes in the Plurall number.

Triptots are thoſe which have three Caſes { Varying from the Nominative. / Not varying from the Nominative.

1 Varying from the Nominative in the ſingular number: as, *Opis, opem, ope. Precis, precem, prece. Vis, vim, vi:* the two latter whereof are whole words in the Plurall number.

2 Not varying from the Nominative in the Plurall: as, *Hordea, Farra, Forum, Mel, Mulſum, Defruta, Thus, Soboles, Labes:* and all Nounes of the fift Declenſion, except *Res, Species, Facies, Acies, Dies*, and his compound *Meridies*.

Tetraptots, are thoſe which have foure Caſes varying from the Nominative, as *Gerundivall* Adjectives, whoſe Nominative is not in uſe; and moſt Pronounes; except *Tu, meus, noſter, noſtras*. Alſo theſe Adjectives, *Vllus, Nonnullus, uter, neuter, alius, alter*, which want the Vocative caſe.

Defectives in number are of fixe ſorts.

1 Maſculines in the ſingular, wanting the plurall; as, *Heſperus, veſper, ponius, limus, ſimus, penus, Æther, nemo.*

2 Fœminines in the ſingular, wanting the plurall; as, *Pubes, ſalus, tuſſis, pix, humus, lues, ſitis, fuga, quies, cholera, fames, bilis.*

3 Neuters in the ſingular, wanting the plurall, as *Delicium, ſenium, lethum, cænum, ſalum, barathrum, virus, vitrum, viſcum, penum, juſtitium, nihilum, ver, lac, gluten, halec, gelu, ſolium, jubar.* To theſe three ſorts of Defectives may be joyned *Unus*; which hath not the Plurall number, except it be joyned with a word that lacketh the Singular number, as *Vna litteræ, una mœnia*, and ſometimes among the Poets, who for verſe ſake often uſe the plurall for the ſingular, as *Virg.*

——— ſatis una ſuperq́
Vidimus excidia, ———

There

There are other Nounes beſides theſe wanting for the moſt part the plurall number, which for the diverſity of the Genders, cannot be ranked under one and the ſame head, the heads of them are twelve comprized in this *Diſtich*.

1 2 3 4 5 6
Propria, Virtutes, Artes, Penſa, Vda, Figura.
7 8 9 10 11 12.
Morbi, Herbæ, Vitia, Ætates, Frumenta, Metalla.

1 *Thomas Ricardus.* 2 *Prudentia. Iuſtitia.*
3 *Grammatica. Logica.* 4 *Piper Saccharum.*
5 *Aromatica.* 6 *Synecdoche. Metaphora.*
7 *Podagra. Cephalalgia* 8 *Amaranthus. Amaracus.* 9 *Deſidia. Avaritia.*
10 *Juventa. Senecta.* 11 *Triticum.* 12 *Aurum. Ferrum.*

4 Maſculines in the Plurall wanting the ſingular, *Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, antes, menſes, lemures, faſti, minores, natales* (when it ſignifies a ſtock) *Penates*, and the proper names of People and Places: as *Gabii, Locri.*

5 Fœminines in the Plurall, wanting the ſingular, as, *Exuviæ, Phaleræ, Grates, Manubiæ, Idus, Antiæ, Induciæ, Inſidiæ, Minæ, Excubiæ, Nonæ, Nugæ, Tricæ, Calendæ, Quiſquiliæ, Thermæ, Cunæ, Diræ, Exequiæ, Feriæ, Inferiæ, Primitiæ, Plagæ* (when it ſignifies nets,) *Valvæ, Nuptiæ, Divitiæ, Lactes, Thebæ, Athenæ*, and ſuch other Proper names of places.

6 Neuters in the Plurall wanting the Singular. *Mœnia, Teſqua, Præcordia, Luſtra, Arma, Mapalia, Bellaria, Munia, Caſtra, Iuſta, Sponſalia, Roſtra, Crepundia, Cunabula, Exta.* And the Feaſts of the Heathenish Gods, as *Bacchanalia*, and Proper names of places as *Suſa.*

To

To these Rules may be added *Ambo* and *Duo*, which in all three Genders want the Singular number.

Redundants are of two sorts.

Redundants { *Substantives.* / *Adjectives.*

Redundant Substantives are of foure sorts.

1 Those that abound in termination only as, *Arbor, Arbos. Odor, Odos.*

2 Those that abound in termination and Gender, as, *Baculus Baculum.*

3 Those that abound in Declension, as *Laurus, Quercus, Pinus, Ficus* for the Fig and the Figtree, *Colus* a Distaffe, *Cornus*, when it is taken for a Cornell tree, *Lacus, Domus*, which are of the Second and Fourth Declension together; but *Domus* holds not in every case: for we read not of *Dome* in the Vocative singular, nor *Domi* in the Nominative Plurall; nor *Domis* in the Dative and Ablative.

4 Those that abound in Declension, Termination and Gender, as, *Specus, ci.* Mas.g. *Specus, cûs.* Fœm.g. *Specus, coris* Neut.g. *Penus, ni.* m.g. *Penus, nûs.* fœm.g. *Penum, ni. & Penus, noris*, neut. g. which are all set downe in A. *Gellius*, and *Callepinus* addeth *Penu indecl.*

Redundant Adjectives are such as are compounded of these Substantives, *Arma, Iugum, Nervus, Somnus, Clivus, Animus, Limen, Frænum, Cera, Bacillus*, as, *Inermus, Inerme* of *Arma: Bijugus, Bijugis* of *Iugum: Innervus, Innervis* of *Nervus: Insomnus, Insomnis* of *Somnus: Proclivus, Proclivis* of *Clivus: Exanimus, Exanimis*, of *Animus: Sublimus, Sublimis* of *Limen; quasi Limen superius: Effrænus, Effrænis* of *Frænum: Sincerus, Sinceris*, of *Cera.*

Imb.

Imbecillus, Imbecillis of *Bacillum*. These Adjectives may not be promiscuously used at our pleasure: for though they be found in old writers, yet many of them are rejected, by those which have refined the latine tongue, as *Insomnus, Sublimus, Effræuis, Sinceris*, to which may be added *Hilarus*, for *Hilaris* is usuall. These are also Redundant Adjectives, which have three terminations, whereas others have but two, of the same Declension.

Acer, cris, cre.
Alacer, cris, cre.
Celer, ris, re,
Compester, stris, stre.
Volucer, cris, cre.
Celeber, bris, bre.

Saluber, bris, bre.
Pedester, stris, stre.
Equester, stris, stre.
Palustr, stris, stre.
Sylvester, stris, stre.

Of a PRONOVNE.

A Pronoune is a part of speech, much like a Noune, variable, both governing and governed, which is used in shewing or rehearsing or asking.

There are seaven Accidents of a Pronoune:
Derivation.
Composition.
Number.
Case.
Gender.
Declension.
Person

There be 64. Pronounes which admit two generall divisions; diverse subdivisions.

1 Every Pronoune is either { *Substantive.* or *Adjective.*

The Pronoune Substantives are but three, *Ego, Tu, Sui.* All the rest being 61. are Adjectives.

2 Every Pronoune is either { *Primitive* or *Derivative.* / *Simple* or *Compound.* } { 19 *Simple.* / 45 *Compound.* }

The 19. Simple are divided into { 10 *Primitives.* / 9 *Derivatives.*

The 10 Primitives are these. *Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui,* which are subdivided into three only Demonstratives, shewing a thing not spoken of before, as, *Ego, Tu, Sui,* into five sometimes Demonstratives, sometimes Relatives as, *Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is.* And *Qui* the only pure *Relative* rehearsing a thing spoken of before. And *Quis* sometimes an Interrogative, sometimes an Indefinite.

The nine Derivatives are divided into { 6 *Possessives. Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester, Cujus.* / 3 *Gentiles. Nostras, Vestras, Cujas.*

The Compound Pronounes are divided into eight ranks.

1 Five Compounded with Nounes as, *Cujusmodi, Hujusmodi, Illiusmodi, Istiusmodi, Aliquis,* to which adde the Decompound *Unusquisque.*

2 Five with other Pronounes as, *Ego-ipse, Tu-ipse, Sui-ipsius, Istic, Illic.*

3 Two compounded with themselves as, *Quisquis,* and *Sese.*

4

4 Three with a *Verbe* as, *Quisputas, Quivis, Quilibet:*

5 Five with an *Adverbe* as, *Eccum, Ellum, Ecquis, Nunquis, Idem.*

6 Seaven with a *Conjunction* as, *Quisquam, Quisq, Quicunq, Hicciae, Nequis, Siquis, Quisnam.*

7 Foure with a *Præposition* as, *Mecum, Tecum, Secum, Quîcum.*

8 Foureteene with a *Syllabicall adjection* as,

With { *Met.* *Egomet, Tuimet, Suimet.* / *Te.* *Tute.* / *Ce.* *Hujusce, Illiusce, Istiusce.* } { *Pte.* *Meapte, Tuapte, Suapte, Nostrapte, Vestrapte.* / *Piam.* *Quispiam.* / *Dam* *Quidam.* }

Numbers and Cases are the same with a Noune, Genders three, Masculine, Fœminine and Neuter in Pronoune Substantives, as also in Pronoune Adjectives of three terminations. And *Nostras, Vestras,* and *Cujas* are of the Common of three.

Pronoune Substantives are of the same Gender, with the Noune whereof they are spoken: as *Ego,* spoken of a man, in the *Masculine,* of a woman, in the *Fœminine.*

Pronounes are thus varied.

Singulariter		Pluraliter	
Nom.	*Ego.*	*Nom.*	*Nos*
Gen.	*Mei.*	*Gen.*	*Nostrûm, vel Nostri.*
Dat.	*Mihi.*	*Dat.*	*Nobis.*
Acc.	*Me.*	*Acc.*	*Nos.*
Voc.	*Caret.*	*Voc.*	*Caret.*
Abl.	*Me.*	*Abl.*	*Nobis.*

And thus is *Egomet* its compound declined.

Singulariter	Nom.	*Tu.*	Pluraliter	Nom.	*Vos.*
	Gen.	*Tui.*		Gen.	*Veſtrûm, vel Veſtri,*
	Dat.	*Tibi.*		Dat.	*Vobis.*
	Acc.	*Te.*		Acc.	*Vos.*
	Voc.	*Tu.*		Voc.	*Vos.*
	Abl.	*Te.*		Abl.	*Vobû.*

So *Tuimet*, *&c.* having no Nominative for the difference of *Tumet* the Verbe. So *Tute* makes *Tete* only in the Accuſ.

Singulariter	Nom.	*Caret.*
	Gen.	*Sui.*
	Dat.	*Sibi.*
	Acc.	*Se.*
	Voc.	*Caret.*
	Abl.	*Se.*

So *Sibimet*, and *Semet*, with his *Decompoſitum*, *Sibimet ipſi*, *& ipſis* in the Dative: *Semetipſum*, *& ipſos*, in the Accuſative, and *Semetipſo*, *& ipſis*, in the Ablative.

Singulariter	Nom.	*Iſte, iſta, iſtud*	Pluraliter	Nom.	*Iſti, iſtæ, iſta.*
	Gen.	*Iſtius.*		Gen.	*Iſtorũ, arũ, orũ.*
	Dat.	*Iſti.*		Dat.	*Iſtis.*
	Acc.	*Iſtũ, iſtã, iſtud.*		Acc	*Iſtos, iſtas, iſta*
	Voc.	*Caret.*		Voc.	*Caret.*
	Abl.	*Iſto, iſtâ, iſto.*		Abl.	*Iſtis.*

Iſte is declined like *Iſte*, one compound whereof makes only *Ellum*, *Ellam*, *Ellos*, *Ellas:* in the Maſculine and Fœminine genders of the Accuſative ſingular and plurall. And alſo *Ipſe* ſaving that in the Neuter gender of the Nominative ſingular it maketh *Ipſum*.

Singulariter

Singulariter: Nom. Iſtic, iſtæc, iſtoc, vel iſtuc. Acc. Iſtunc, iſtanc, iſtoc, vel iſtuc. Abl. Iſtoc, iſtâc, iſtoc.
Pluraliter: Nom. / Acc. } Iſtæc.

So, Illic, illæc, illoc.

Singulariter: Nom. Hic, hæc, hoc. Gen. Hujus. Dat. Huic. Acc. Hunc, hanc, hoc. Voc. Caret. Abl. Hoc, hâc, hoc.
Pluraliter: Nom. Hi, hæ, hæc. Ge. Horũ, harũ, horũ. Dat. His. Acc. Hos, has, hæc. Voc. Caret. Abl. His.

Ce, is ſometimes added to the Oblique Caſes of theſe three Pronounes, *Hic*, *ille*, *iſte*, as often as they end in, s, as, *Hujuſce*, *Hiſce*, *Illiuſce*, *Iſtiuſce*, *Illoſce*, *Iſtoſce*, *Hoſce*: whoſe compound *Hiccine* is thus varied.

Singulariter: Nom. Hiccine, hæccine, hoccine. Acc. Hunccine, hanccine hoccine. Abl. Hoccine, hâccine, hoccine.
Pluraliter: Nom. & Acc. } Hæccine

Singulariter: Nom. Is, ea, id. Gen. Ejus. Dat. Ei. Acc Eum, eam, id. Voc. Caret. Abl. Eo, eâ, eo.
Pluraliter: Nom. Ei, eæ, ea. Gen. Eorũ, earũ, eorũ. Dat. Eis, vel iis. Acc. Eos, eas, ea. Voc. Caret. Abl. Eis, vel iis.

So *Idem*, its Compound. The other Compound makes only *Eccum*, *eccam*, *eccos*, *eccas*. Singular and Plurall.

Singu-

Singulariter	Pluraliter
Nom. Qui, quæ, quod.	*Nom. Qui, quæ, quæ.*
Gen. Cujus.	*Gen. Quorũ, quarũ, quorum.*
Dat. Cui.	*Dat. Quibus, v. queis*
Acc. Quem, quã, quod	*Acc. Quos, quas, quæ.*
Voc. Caret.	*Voc. Caret.*
Abl. Quo, quâ, quo, vel quî, Sometimes in the Maſ. & Fœm.	*Abl. Quibus v. queis.*

After the ſame manner is declined *Quis* with its Compounds. Except *Quiſpiam*, which makes *Quipiam* for *Quidpiam* in the neuter Gender. And *Nequis, aliquis, unquis, ſiquis*, which as well in the Fœminine ſingular, as in the Neuter plurall, make *Qua*, not *Quæ*, and *Ecquis* which hath both in the Fœminine gender, and laſtly *Quisquis*, which is thus varied.

Nom. Quisquis, Quicquid.
Acc. Quicquid.
Abl. Quoquo, Quâquâ Quoquo.

Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noſter, Veſter, are declined like *Bonus* (ſave that *Meus* hath *Mi*, in the *Voc*, not *Mee*) *Ille, Ipſe, Iſte*, Is, like *Solus* (but that Ille, *Iſte*, and Is, make the Neuter ſingular in, *d*, not, *m*, like *Alius*) *Noſtras* and *Veſtras* like to *Felix*.

The ſeaventh Accident of a Pronoune, is *Perſon*. which is triple.

The firſt ſpeaketh of himſelfe, as, *Ego* I, *Nos*, wee.
The ſecond is ſpoken to, as, *Tu*, thou. *Vos*, yee.
The third is ſpoken of, as, *Ille*, he, *Illi*, they.

Of

OF A VERBE.

A Verbe is a part of Speech, variable, both governing and governed, signifying to Doe, to Suffer, and to Be.

There be 9. *Accidents* of a *Verb*.
- *Derivation.*
- *Compositio.*
- *Moodes.*
- *Tenses.*
- *Gerunds.*
- *Supines.*
- *Number.*
- *Person.*
- *Conjugations.*

A Verbe hath 18. severall Appellations, and only three significations, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*, as appears by its five generall Divisions.

The first whereof is into a Verbe
- *Active.*
- *Passive.*
- *Neuter.*
- *Deponent.*
- *Common.*

Neuter-Active.
Neuter-Passive.

A Verbe Active endeth in, *o*, and signifieth to Doe, as *Amo*, I love, and by putting to, *r*, it may be a Passive, as *Amor*.

A Verbe Passive endeth in, *or*, and signifieth to suffer, as *Amor*, I am loved, and by putting away *r*, it may be an Active, as *Amo*.

A verbe Neuter endeth in, *m*, (as only *Sum*, and his compounds) or in, *o*, which cannot take *r*, to make him a Passive: and signifies sometimes, To be

(as only the simple Verbe *Sum*) sometimes Active like, as *Curro* I runne: sometimes Passive like, as *Ægroto*, I am sick.

A Verbe Deponent ends in, *or*, like a Passive: and yet in signification is either Active, as *Loquor Verbum*, I speake a word: or Neuter, as *Glorior*, I boast.

A Verbe Commune endeth in, *or*, like a Passive, and hath both Active and Passive significations, as *Adipiſcor*, *Adulor*. Verbs Commune are very rare, and thoſe that are, are almoſt worne out of uſe.

A Neuter Active is partly Neuter, in that it ends in, *o*, and cannot take *r*, to make him a Passive: and partly Active, in that it hath an Active and Transitive ſignification, of which ſort there are diverſe, as *Ambio*, *Convenio*, *Doleo*, *Evado*, *Facio*, and diverſe others.

A Neuter-Passive is partly Neuter, in that it ends in *o*, and cannot take *r*, to make him a Passive: and partly Passive, in that it hath either the Præterperfect tenſe of a Passive, the ſignification of a Passive, or both: in reſpect whereof it is three fold.

1 Neuter-paſſives in reſpect of their Præterperfect Tenſe only, are theſe foure *Gaudeo*, *Gaviſus ſum*: *Fido*, *Fiſus*: *Audeo*, *Auſus*: *Soleo*, *ſolitus*.

2 Neuter-paſſives in reſpect of their ſignification only, are theſe foure, *Vapulo*, *Væneo*, *Liceo*, *Exulo*.

3 A Neuter-paſſive in reſpect of both, is only Fa

2 Every Verbe { *Primitive* or *Derivative*. is either { *Simple* or *Compound*.

A Primitive Verbe is that which is not deduced from another, as *Amo*.

A De-

A Derivative is that which is deduced from its Primitive.

Which is twofold { *Nominall.* / *Verball.*

Nominall is either { *Substantivall.* or *Adjectivall.*

A Substantivall Verbe is that which is derived from a Substantive, as *Verbero* of *Verber*, *Puerasco* of *Puer*.

An Adjectivall Verbe is that which is derived of an Adjective, as *Nigreo*, of *Niger*: *Pingueo*, of *Pinguis*.

Verball is that which is derived of a verbe { *Generally*, as *Scaturio* of *Scateo*. / *Particularly*, which is five fold.

1 Such as are called *Inceptives*, *Inchoatives*, or *Augmentatives*; because they imply either a beginning or increase of signification, as *Tepesco* of *Tepeo*: *Ferveſco* of *Ferveo*.

2 *Frequentatives*, which imply a frequent iteration of an action, being either derived of the Preſent Tenſe; as *Vellico* of *Vello*: or of the latter Supine; whereof there are five Terminations.

In, *So*: as *Pulſo*, of *Pulſu*, of *Pepuli*, of *Pello*.
In, *To*: as *Dictito*, of *Dictu*, of *Dixi*, of *Dico*.
In, *Tor*: as *Scitor*, of *Scitu*, of *Scivi*, of *Scio*.
In, *Xo*: as *Nexo*, of *Nexu*, of *Nexi*, of *Necto*.
In, *Xor*: as *Amplexor*, of *Amplexu*, &c.

3 *Deſideratives* which imply a deſire to doe a thing, coming of the latter Supine, of other Verbs of the ſame ſignification: as *Parturio*, of *Partu*, of *Peperi*,

peri, of *Pario*, *Esurio*, of *Esu*, of *Edi*, of *Edo*.

4 *Diminutives*, which imply a diminution of doing, whereof there are two terminations.

In, *Lo*: as *Sorbitho*, of *Sorbeo*.

In, *sso*: as *Pitisso*, of *πίπτω*, of *πίνω*.

5 *Imitatives*; which imply an imitation; as *Patrisso*, of *Patrizo*. *Platonisso*, of *Platonizo*, which forme the Latines affect not, but use *Græcor pro Græcisso*: *Cornicor pro cornicisso*: *Bacchor pro Bacchisso*, &c.

A Simple Verbe is that which is not Compounded, as, *Ago*.

A Compound is that which is compounded of two words, whereof there are seaven heads.

1 With a Substantive, as *Oscito*: of *Os*, & *cito*.

2 With an Adjective, as, *Possum*, of *Pos* and *Sum*.

3 with another Verbe, as, *Olfacio*: of *oleo* and *facio*.

4 With an Adverbe, as, *Satisfacio*, of *satis* and *facio*.

5 With a Præposition, as, *Inficio*; of *in* and *facio*.

6 Of a Præposition and a Substantive, as, *Peragro*, of *Per*, and *Ager*.

7 Of a Præposition and an Adjective: as *Ignoro*, of *in*, and *gnarus*.

3 Every Verbe is either { *Regular*, or *Irregular*.

Regular Verbes are those which are varied after the foure Conjugations, and are formed according to the Moodes and Tenses following.

Irregular

Irregular Verbes are such as doe swerve from the common manner of variation, and formation, in number sixe, after mentioned, with their compounds.

4 Every Verbe is either { *Personall*, or *Impersonall*.

Personalls are such as have persons, as *Ego Amo. Tu Amas.*

An *Impersonall* is that which wants the Primary persons, to wit the first and second: and is used in the third Person, in every Moode and Tense having the signe, *it*, before his English. The signe, there, is found only in one, as *Vacat*, for *otium est*, there is leasure. *Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Iovi. Ovid.* As Personalls are not so called, because they have a Nominative before them, but because they have distinct Persons: So Verbs are not called Impersonalls because they have no Nominative, as if they were Innominatives: for they have often a Nominative set downe, if not one commonly understood, or implyed: yet sometimes without either: as *Cicero. Non est ab ipso perseveratum*, and such like. Nor may they be called Impersonalls like Infinitive Moods, because they have no certaine Person: but because they are destitute of their principall Persons.

Impersonalls are either properly so called, which are used allwaies absolutely, (*i*) not having a Nominative before them, as *Libet, Tædet, Pluit, Ningit*, of the Active forme: *Statur, Fletur, Perseveratum est, Pugnatum est*, of the Passive, (which two latter, and others of like sort, are circumlocuted by the Participle of the Præter Tense, signifying a thing past, as *Pugnatum est*, it hath been fought, and

not

not by the first Supine: implying a thing to come, as *Eo Pugnatum*, I goe to fight. Or else improperly, which sometimes are otherwise used, and that either in the third Person only, either in the singular number only, as *Licet, liquet*, Active: *Dormitur, Bibitur*, Passive: or plurall, as *Oportent, Pudent, Paenitebunt*, Active; *Peccantur, Regnantur, Vigilantur*, Passive: Or in other Persons also not in the Passive forme, for they never vary: as *Luditur, Vivitur*: but in the Active forme, and then they cease to be Verbs Impersonalls, whereof some have been whole Verbs in old time, as *Decet, Piget, Miseret*: and other some in use now, as *Juvat, Properat, Misertescit, Placet*, and such like. It is most rare that an Impersonall should come of a Verbe Deponent, because they lay aside the Passive signification.

§ Every Verbe is divided into { *Redundant.* / *Defective.* / *Compleat.*

Redundants are those that have too much, and *Defective*, that have too little: both which afterward are specified in their due place.

A *Compleat* Verb is a mean betwixt these two extreams, that hath neither too much nor too little.

A Moode is that which to the signification of a Verbe, addeth the manner of signifying, with the change of termination.

For if there be no regard had of the difference of voice and termination, as well as of the manner of signifying, there will be as many Moods, as there be affections of the minde, by which we are induced to speake: as the Imperative so may be tearmed a *Deprecative, Permissive, Hortative*, and *Suppositive* Moode.

There

There be Sixe Moods { *Indicative.* *Imperative.* *Optative.* *Potentiall.* *Subjunctive.* *Infinitive.*

The *Indicative*, of *indico*, to ſhew, becauſe it ſhewes or declares ſomething to be done or ſuffered.

The *Imperative* of *impero*, to command, becauſe it bids or commands, having alſo the ſigne ſet in the third Perſon ſingular, and in the firſt and third Plurall.

The *Optative* of *opto*, to wiſh, becauſe it hath alwaies an Adverbe of wiſhing aforegoing.

The *Potentiall*, of *Potens*, of *Poſſum*, to may or can; becauſe the ſignes of the ſeverall Tenſes of this Moode are, *May*, *Can*, *Might*, *Would*, *ſhould*, or *could*.

The *Subjunctive*, of *Subjungo*, to ſubjoyne, becauſe it is ever ſubjoyned to another verb in the ſame ſentence aforegoing. It is alſo called the *Conjunctive* Moode, becauſe commonly it hath ſome *Conjunction* immediatly before it, and ſometimes an *Adverb*. One difference betweene the Subjunctive and Potentiall, is that the Subjunctive is Engliſhed like the Indicative: not the Potentiall, as, *cùm amem*, when I doe love.

The

The *Infinitive*, of *infinitus*, indefinite, because it signifies to doe, to suffer, and to be, indefinitely, & indeterminately, having neither number, perſon, nor nominative to limit it.

A Tenſe is the difference of a Verb, according to the time Præſent, Paſt, and to come.

There be three Tenſes or Times { *Præſent.* *Præter.* *Future.* } *Tenſe.*

The *Præſent* Tenſe ſpeaketh of the time that now is, with the ſigne, *Doe*, in the firſt Perſon ſingular, and third Perſon plurall, in an Active or Active-like ſignification, as *Amo*, I doe love; but in a Paſſive or Paſſive-like, *am*, in the firſt Perſon, *art*, in the ſecond; *is*, in the third ſingular; and, *are* in the three Perſons plurall.

The *Præter* Tenſe is three fold { *Præterimperfect.* *Præterperfect.* *Præterpluperfect.* }

The *Præterimperfect* Tenſe, ſpeaketh of the time not perfectly paſt, with the ſigne, *Did*, in all Perſons except the ſecond ſingular, (in which it hath, *Didſt*) in an Active or Active-like ſignification, as *Amabam*, I did love. But in a Paſſive, or Paſſive-like ſignification, in the ſingular, *was*, and in the plurall, *were*, as *Amabar*, I was loved.

The *Præterperfect* Tenſe ſpeaketh of the time perfectly paſt, with the ſigne *Have*, in the firſt ſingu-

lar, and the third plurall; In the ſecond ſingular *Haſt*, in the third *Hath*, in both Active and Paſſive ſignification, or in Verbs like unto them, as *Amavi*, I have loved: *Amatus ſum vel fui*, I have been loved.

The *Præterpluperfect* Tenſe, ſpeaketh of the time more then perfectly paſt, with the ſigne *Had*, in all Perſons (except the ſecond ſingular in which it hath *Hadſt*) in both Active and Paſſive ſignification; or in Verbs like unto them: as *Amaveram* I had loved. *Amatus eram vel fueram*, I had been loved.

The *Future* Tenſe ſpeaketh of the time to come; with the ſignification *ſhall* or *will* in all Perſons, except the ſecond ſingular (in which it hath *ſhalt* or *wilt*) in both Active and Paſſive ſignification: as *Amabo*, I ſhall or will love. *Amabor*, I ſhall or will be loved. Now the Future in the Active ſignification is two fold { *Imperfect*, as, *cum Perlegam*, when I ſhall or will read over. *Perfect*, as, *cum Perlegero*, when I ſhall have read over.

There be three Gerunds.

The firſt endeth in, *Di*, which reſembles the Genitive caſe: the ſecond in, *Do*, the Dative and Ablative: the third in, *Dum*, the Accuſative: being the Accidents of Verbs in, *o*, and Verbs in *or*, (except Paſſives which have none) which follow the ſignification of the Verbs they come of, being derived of the Preſent tenſe, ſo that they ſeldome or never have the Paſsive ſignification, unleſſe they come of a *Neuter Paſſive*, or by an *Archaiſme*.

There be two *Supines* being Accidents alſo of the

the same Verbe only.

The first ending in *um*, followes the signification of the Verbe whereof it comes, being derived of the Præterperfect Tense, so that it never signifies Passively, unlesse it be the Supine of a Neuter Passive, as *Vapulatum* to be beaten.

The latter ends in, *u*, and hath alwaies the Passive signification, as *Amatu* to be loved.

Numbers and *Persons* are the same with a *Prnoune*, save that the Description of a Person belongeth properly to this place.

A Person is the speciall termination of a Verbe in both Numbers.

There are foure *Participles* belonging to Regular compleat Verbs, two appertaine to Verbs in *o*, The Participle of the *Præsent* Tense, and the Participle of the Future in *rus*: two belong to a verb Passive, A Participle of the *Præter* Tense, and a Participle of the Future in *Dus*; and all foure belong to a Verbe *Deponent* and *Commune*; whereof more in its due place.

Regular Compleat Verbs have foure *Conjugations*, which be known after this manner; either by the termination of the root, or (more certainly) by the Infinitive Moode, First by the termination of the roote.

Verbs of the First Conjugation end commonly in, *o* impure, as *Amo*: (except some in, *o purum*, as *Beo*, *Meo*, *Screo*) having the second Person in *s*, as *Amas*.

Verbs of the second Conjugation end commonly in *eo*, as *Doceo*.

The third commonly in *o*, impure, as *Lego* (except

cept a few in, *o purum*, as *Fodio, Fugio, Capio, Pario, Statuo,*) having the second Person, in *is*, as *Legis*.

The fourth commonly in, *io*, as *Audio*.

2 By the Infinitive Moode infallibly, where Verbs of the first Conjugation have, *ā*, long before, *re*, and *ri*, as *Amāre, Amāri*. The second hath, *e*, long before *re*, and *ri*, as *Docēre, Docēri*. The third hath *ĕ*, short before, *re*, as *Legĕre:* whose Infinitive Passive endeth in, *i*, as *Legi*, having the last consonant of the roote præfixed to it: as *Trado, Tradi*. The fourth hath *i*, long before, *re*, and *ri*, as *Audīre, Audīri*.

Conjugation is the varying of a Verbe, by its severall Moodes, Tenses, & Persons.

To the conjugating of compleat Verbs in, *o*, whether they be Regular, or Irregular, sixe things are requisite: the *Present* Tense, the *Præterperfect* Tense, the *Infinitive moode, Gerunds, Supines*, and two *Participles*, the Participle of the *Present* Tense, and of the *Future* in *rus*, as

Amo, Amas, Amavi, Amare, Amandi, Amando, Amandum, Amatum, Amatu, Amans, Amaturus, to Love.

Doceo, Doces, Docui, Docere, Docendi, Docendo, Docendum, Doctum, Doctu, Docens, Docturus, to Teach.

Lego, Legis, Legi, Legere, Legendi, Legendo, Legendum, Lectum, Lectu, Legens, Lecturus, to Read.

Audio, Audis, Audivi, Audire, Audiendi, Audiendo, Audiendum, Auditum, Auditu, Audiens, Auditurus, to heare.

The Forming of a Verb is the assuming of one Person, and varying of the same, throughout all Moods and Tenses.

For the more easy varying and forming of Verbs according to the Moods and Tenses, and for the better parsing of a Lesson, these three rules of *Derivation* are not unnecessary.

1 The other Persons of every Tense, come of the first Person of the same Tense.

2 Of the Present Tense of the Indicative Moode, being the Theame and roote of all, comes the Præterimperfect tense, the Præterperfect, and the Future tense of the same Moode; the Præsent and Præterimperfect of all other Moods: as of *Amo*, is formed, *Amabam*, *Amavi*, *Amabo*, *Ama*, *Amem*, *Amarem*, *Amare*.

3 Of the Præterimperfect tense of the Indicative Moode, comes the Præterpluperfect tense of the same Moode: the Præterperfect, the Præterpluperfect, and the Future tense of the *Optative*, *Potentiall*, and *Subjunctive* Moode: the Præterperfect and the Præterpluperfect tense of the Infinitive Moode; as of *Amavi*, are formed *Amaveram*, *Amaverim*, *Amavero*; (by changing *i*, into *ĕ* short) *Amavissem*, *Amavisse*; (by keeping, *i*, still.)

Indica-

Indicative Moode, Præſent tenſe ſingular.

I love, or doe love.	Thou loveſt, or doſt love.	He loveth, or doth love.	We love, or doe love.	Ye love, or doe love.	They love or doe love.

Amo,	amas,	amat.	Pluraliter	Amamus, amatis, amant.
Doceo,	doces,	docet.		Docemus, docetis docent.
Lego,	legis,	legit.		Legimus, legitis, legunt.
Audio.	audis.	audit.		Audimus, auditis, audiunt.

Præterimperfect tenſe ſingular. { Amabam, Docebam, Legebam. Audiebam. } bas, bat. I loved or did love, &c. Plur. bamus, batis, bant.

Præterperfect tenſe ſingular. { Amavi, Docui, Legi, Audivi, } iſti, it. I have loved, &c. Plur. imus, iſtis, êrunt, vel êre.

Præterpluperfect tenſe ſingular. { Amaveram, Docueram, Legeram, Audiveram. } ras, rat. I had loved, &c. Plural. ramus, ratis, rant.

Future tenſe ſingular. { Amabo, Docebo, Legam, Audiam, } bis, bit. es, et. I ſhall or will love, &c. Plural. { bimus, bitis, bunt. emus, etis, ent. }

Imperative Moode, preſent tenſe ſingular.

Love thou.	Love he or let him love.		Love we or let us love.	Love yee.	Love they or let them love
Ama, *Amato.*	*Amet,* *Amato.*	Plur.	*Amemus,*	*Amate,* *Amatote.*	*Ament,* *Amanto,*
Doce, *Docето.*	*Doceat,* *doceto,*	Plur.	*Doceamus.*	*Docete,* *Docetote.*	*Doceant,* *Docento.*
Lege, *Legeto.*	*Legat,* *Legito.*	Plur.	*Legamus,*	*Legite,* *Legitote.*	*Legant,* *Legunto.*
Audi, *Audito.*	*audiat,* *audito.*	Plur.	*Audiamus,*	*Audite* *Auditote,*	*audiant,* *audiunto.*

The Optative, Potentiali, and Subjunctive Moode, are found all alike in voice, and doe differ only in the ſigne of the Moode, and therefore the variation of a Verbe according to one of them will be ſufficient.

Subjunctive Moode.

When I love, &c.

Præſent tenſe ſingul. *cùm* *Amem, ames, amet.* Plu. *cùm Amemus, etis, ent.* *Doceam,* *Legam,* *Audiam,* *as, at.* Pluraliter, *cùm, amus, atis, ant.*

Præte-

Præterimperfect tense singular *cùm.*	*Amarem,* *Docerem,* *Legerem,* *Audirem.*	*res, ret.* Plural. *cùm remus, retis, rent.*	When I loved, or did love, &c.
Præterperfect tense singular, *cùm.*	*Amaverim,* *Docuerim,* *Legerim,* *Audiverim,*	*ris, rit.* Plur. *cùm rimus, ritis, rint.*	When I have loved, &c.
Præterpluperfect tense singular, *cùm*	*Amavissem,* *Docuissem,* *Legissem,* *Audivissem,*	*ses, set.* Plur. *cùm semus, setis, sent.*	When I had loved, &c.
Future tense singular *cùm*	*Amavero,* *Docuero,* *Legero,* *Audivero,*	*ris, rit.* Plur. *cùm rimus, ritis rint.*	When I shall or will love, &c.

Infinitive Moode.

Præsent tense	*Amare,* *Docere,* *Legere,* *Audire,*	To	Love. Teach. Reade. Heare.
Præterimperfect, Præterperfect, & Præterpluperfect tense,	*Amavisse,* *Docuisse,* *Legisse,* *Audivisse.*	To have or had	Loved. Taught. Read. Heard.

The Præterimperfect tense of this Moode, is not comprehended under the Præsent tense, but under the Præterperfect tense: for we may well say, for

Gaudeo quòd Amas, *Gandeo te* Amare; but not fo *Gaudeo quòd jam tam amabas, Gaudeo te jam tam amare, but amaſſe*, Neither is the Præſent tenſe of the Infinitive, by Analogy, put for the Præterimperfect of the Indicative: for in all ſuch expreſſions, as *Virgils, Tum pius, Æneas humeris abſcindere veſtem*, there is an Elleipſis of the verbe *Cæpit*.

Future tenſe, { *Amaturum, Doctúrum, Lecturum, Auditurum,* } *eſſe*, to { Love, Teach, Reade, Heare, } hereafter.

This tenſe is *Periphraſticall*, circumlocuted by the Participle of the Future in, *rus*, and the Infinitive Moode *Eſſe, Fore*, or *Fuiſſe*: for as the Future tenſe of the Indicative, ſo the Future tenſe of this Moode is two fold, *Imperfect* and *Perfect*: for, *illum hanc non venditurum eſſe dico*, I ſay that he will not ſell theſe, is much different from, *illum non venditurum fuiſſe dico*, I ſay that he would not have ſold them. *Cicero*. And in this tenſe, Futures may be added to Futures, as, *Cicero. Deinde addis, ſi quid ſecus, tea me fore Venturum*. So in other moodes, as, *De omnibus erimus dicturi: idem Excitandus erit nobis ab inferis, &c. idem*.

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving.	*do*, in loving.	*dum*, to love.
Docendi, of teaching.	*do*, in teaching.	*dum*, to teach.
Legendi, of reading.	*do*, in reading.	*dum*, to read.
Audiendi, of hearing.	*do*, in hearing.	*dum*, to heare.

Supines.

Supines.

Amatum, to love,	*Amatu*, to be loved.
Doctum, to teach,	*Doctu*, to be taught.
Lectum, to read,	*Lectu*, to be read.
Auditum, to heare,	*Auditu*, to be heard.

Participles.

Of the Preſent tenſe,
- *Amans*, Loving.
- *Docens*, Teaching.
- *Legens*, Reading.
- *Audiens*, Hearing.

Of the Future in *rus*,
- *Amaturus*, to love, or about to love.
- *Docturus*, to teach, or about to teach.
- *Lecturus*, to read, or about to read.
- *Auditurus*, to hear, or about to hear.

Becauſe the ſignifications of the firſt irregular Verbe *Sum*, in his ſeverall perſons, Moods and Tenſes, are the ſignes of a Paſsive; and the Paſſive Præterperfect tenſe, is circumlocuted by the Participle of the Præter Tenſe, and *Sum*; therefore it comes next to be varied, with its compounds, *Abſum*, *Deſum*, *Adſum*, *Inſum*, *Interſum*, *Obſum*, *Proſum*, *Superſum*, to which may be added *Poſſum*, varied in its due place.

Foure things are requiſite to the conjugating of *Sum*. The Præſent Tenſe, Præterpertect Tenſe, Infinitive Moode, and one Participle, as

Sum, *Es*, *Fui*, *Eſſe*, *Futurus*. To be.

Indicative Moode.

Præsent tense singular, { *Sum*, I am: *es*, *est*. Pluraliter *Sumus*, *estis*, *sunt*.

Præterimperfect tense singular, { *Eram*, I was: *eras*, *erat*. Pluraliter, *Eramus*, *eratis*, *erant*.

Præterperfect tense singular, { *Fui*, I have been: *fuisti*, *fuit*. Pluraliter, *Fuimus*, *fuistis*, *fuerunt*, *vel fuêre*.

Præterpluperfect tense, singular { *Fueram*, I had been: *fueras*, *fuerat*. Plural. *fueramus*, *fueratis*, *fuerant*.

Future tense singular { *Ero*, I shall or will be: *eris*, *erit*. Pluraliter *Erimus*, *eritis*, *erunt*.

Imparative Moode.

Præsent tense singular, { *Sis*, *Es*, *Esto*, } be thou { *Sit*, *Esto*, } Plural. { *Sitis*, *Este*, *Estote*, } { *Sint*. *Sunto*.

Subjunctive Moode.

Præsent tense singular *Cùm* { *Sim*, When I am: *sis*, *sit*. Pluraliter *cùm simus*, *sitis*, *sint*.

Præterimperfect tense sing { *Essem*, when I was: *esses*, *esset*. Pluraliter *cùm essemus*, *essetis*, *essent*.

Præterperfect tense singular *Cùm* { *Fuerim*, when I have been: *fueris*, *fuerit*. Plur. *cùm fuerimus*, *fueritis*, *fuerint*.

Præter-

Præterpluperfect tenſe ſing. *cùm* { *Fuiſſem*, when I had been: *fuiſſes, fuiſſet.*
Plur. *cùm fuiſſemus, fuiſſetis, fuiſſent.*

Future tenſe ſingular *cùm*. { *Fuero*, When I ſhall or will be, *fueris, fuerit,*
Plur. *cùm, fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.*

Infinitive Moode.

Preſent tenſe { *Eſſe* to be { Præterimperfect, Præterperfect, Præterpluperfect } *Fuiſſe*, to have or had been.

Future tenſe { *Fore* vel *futurum eſſe* } To be hereafter.

To the Conjugating of Verbs *Deponents* and *Commons*, there are required the ſame ſixe things, that are uſed in Verbs in, *o*, afore mentioned: ſaving that to the formeing of theſe, all the foure Participles are required; as *Sequor &c. Sequens, Secuturus, Secutus, Sequendus.*

To the Conjugating of Verbs *Paſſives* foure things are required, The Præſent tenſe, the Præterperfect tenſe, the Infinitive Moode, and two Participles, the Participle of the præter tenſe, and the Participle of the Future in *Dus*, as

Amor, Amaris vel amare, Amatus ſum vel fui, Amari, Amatus, Amandus, to be Loved.

Doceor, Doceris vel docere, Doctus ſum vel fui, Docori, Doctus, Docendus, to be Taught.

Legor, Legeris vel legere, Lectus ſum vel fui, Legi, Lectus Legendus, to be Read.

Audior,

Audior, *Audiris*, *vel audire*, *Auditus sum vel fui*, *Audiri*, *Auditus*, *Audiendus*, to be heard.

The Rules, of the derivation of the Tenses in Verbs in, *or*, are the same with those of verbs in, *o*, afore specified: except that the Passive Præterperfect tense comes of the latter Supine of the Active.

Indicative Moode.

I am loved.

Præsent tense sing.	*Amor*, *amaris vel amare*, *amatur*. *Doceor*, *doceris vel docere*, *docetur*. *Legor*, *legeris vel legere*, *legitur*. *Audior*, *audiris vel audire*, *auditur*.	Pluraliter	*mur*, *mini*, *ntur*. *untur*.

Præterimperfect tense singular.	*Amabar*, *Docebar*, *Legebar*, *Audiebar*,	I was loved, &c. *baris vel bare*, *batur*. Plur. *bamur*, *bamini*, *bantur*.

Præterperfect tense sing.	*Amatus*, *Doctus*, *Lectus*, *Auditus*,	I have bin loved. *sum vel fui*.	*tus es vel fuisti*, *tus est vel fuit*, Plural. *ti sumus vel fuimus*, *ti estis vel fuistis*, *ti sunt fuerunt vel fuêre*.

Præterpluperf. tense singul.	*Amatus*, *Doctus*, *Lectus*, *Auditus*,	I had bin loved. *eram vel fueram*.	*tus eras vel fueras*, *tus erat vel fuerat*. Plural. *ti eramus vel fueramus*, *ti eratis vel fueratis*, *ti erant*, *vel fuerant*.

Future tense sin.	*Amabor*, *Docebor*, *Legar*, *Audiar*,	I shall or will be loved. *beris vel ere*, *itur*. Plur. *bimur*, *imini*, *untur*. *êris vel êre*, *etur*. Plur. *êmur*, *êmini*, *entur*.

Impe-

Imperative Moode,
Præſ. ſingular.

Be thou loved.	let him be loved.	let us be loved.	be yee loved.	let them be loved.
Amare,	*ametur,*	Pluraliter	*Amamini,*	*amentur*
Amator,	*amator,*	*amemur.*	*Amaminor,*	*amantor.*
Docere,	*doceatur,*	Pluraliter	*Docemini,*	*doceantur,*
Docetor.	*docetor.*	*doceamur.*	*Doceminor,*	*docentor.*
Legere,	*legator*	Pluraliter	*Legimini,*	*legantur,*
Legitor,	*legitor.*	*legamur.*	*Legiminor,*	*leguntor.*
Audire,	*audiatur,*	Pluraliter	*Audimini,*	*audiantur,*
Auditor,	*auditor.*	*audiamur.*	*Audiminor,*	*audiuntor.*

Subjunctive Moode.

When I am loved.

Præſent tenſe ſingular, *cùm.* *Amer, Docear, Legar, Audiar,* *eris vel ere, etur.* Plur. *cùm emur, emini, entur.* *aris, vel are, atur.* P. *cùm amur, amini, ntur.*

When I was loved.

Præterimperfect tenſe ſingular *cùm.* *Amarer, Docerer, Legerer, Audirer,* *reris vel rere, retur.* Plur. *cùm remur, remini, rentur.*

When I have been loved.

Præterperfect tenſe ſingular *cùm* *Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus,* *ſim vel fuerim, tus ſis vel fueris, tus ſit vel fuerit.* P. *cùm, ti ſimus vel fuerimus, ti ſitis vel fueritis, ti ſint, vel fuerint.*

Præter-

When I had been loved.

Præterpluperfect tense singular, *cùm.*
Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, *essem vel fuissem, tus esses vel fuisses, tus esset vel fuisset. Pl. cùm, ti essemus vel fuissemus, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.*

When I shall or will be loved.

Future tense singular *cùm*
Amatus, Doctus, Lectus, Auditus, *ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus erit vel fuerit. P. cùm, ti erimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.*

Infinitive Moode.

Present tense singular.
Amari, Doceri, Legi, Auditi, To be *Loved, Taught, Read, Heard.*

Præterimperfect, Præterperfect, Præterpluperfect singular.
Amatum, Doctum, Lectum, Auditum, To have or had been loved. *esse vel fuisse.*

Future tense
Amatum iri, vel amandum esse. Doctum iri, vel docendum esse. Lectum iri, vel legendum esse. Auditũ iri, vel audiendum esse. To be *Loved, Taught, Read, Heard* hereafter.

This

This Tenſe is circumlocuted, not by the firſt Supine or the Gerund in *Dum*, becauſe they never vary: but by the Infinitive Moode, *iri*, *eſſe*, *vel fore*, and by the Participles of the Præter tenſe, and the Future in *Dus:* which are found ſometimes to vary: for as the future in, *rus*, in the future tenſe of the Infinitive moode of the Active forme, doth vary according to the Gender and Number of the precedent Subſtantive, as in theſe examples, *Aiunt ſe Deorum immortalium cauſâ libentèr facturos eſſe:* Livi. *Lucem de domo Corneliâ prodituram fore.* Portius. *An tu cenſes ullam anum tam deliram futuram fuiſſe, ut somniis crederet? Cicero.* So the Participle of the Præter tenſe, as, *Quos ſpero ſocietate Victoriæ tecum copulatos fore*, Cicero. *Injuriam ab huius familiâ factam eſſe dixiſti.* Idem. And the Participle of the future in *Dus*; *Credite item Vim univerſam flagitioſæ juventutis hodierno Catilinæ ſupplicio ſimul conficiendam fore*, may be ſaid to vary in the Future tenſe of the Infinitive moode of the Paſſive forme. But when theſe three Participles end in, *um*, then they are put abſolutely in the Neuter Gender, and are joyned to nounes of all Genders and numbers: as *Credo ego inimicos meos hoc dicturum eſſe, Cai. Gracch. Aruſpices dixerunt omnia ex ſententiâ progreſſurum eſſe. Valer. Ad ſummam perniciem Rempub. perventurum eſſe prædico. Cicero. Poſtquam audierat non datum iri uxorem ſibi. Terent. Sperant bonos ui mortuis excitandum fore. Syl.* So alſo in the Præterperfect tenſe of the Infinitive Moode paſſive: as *Iuſtam rem & facilem oratum à vobis volo. Plaut.* So likewiſe the Participle of the Future in *Dus* joyned with the Verbe *Eſt*, for being put Subſtantively in the neuter Gender it is the nominative

to

to *est*, as *Abeundum est mihi*. So that *Abire* understood, cannot be the Substantive to *Abeundum* or the nominative to *Est*, as *Vossius* would have it, *pace tanti viri*.

Participles.

A Participle of the Præterperfect tense. { *Amatus*, loved. / *Doctus*, Taught. / *Lectus*, Read. / *Auditus*, Heard. }

A Participle of the Fut. in *dus* { *Amandus*, *Docendus*, *Legendus*, *Audiendus*. } { To be } { Loved. / Taught. / Read. / Heard. }

Possum the Compound of *Sum*, and the other five irregular Verbs with their Compounds are thus varied.

Possum, potes, potui, posse, potens. To may or can. *Volo, vis, volui, velle, volendi, volendo, volendum, Supinis caret, volens*, To will or to be willing.

So his two cõpounds. { *Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle, nolendi, nolendo, nolendum, Supinis caret, nolens*: to Nill, or to be unwilling. / *Malo, mavis, malui, malle, malendi, malendo, malendum, Supinis caret*, To have rather. }

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse, edendi, edendo, edendum, esum, esu, vel estum, estu, edens, *esurus, vel esturus*. To eat. So his two Compounds, *Vomedo*, and *Exedo*, saving that the former makes *Esum, Esu*, in the Supines.

To

Fio, fis, factus sum vel fui, fieri, factus, faciendus. To be made or done. So his Compounds which are so many as the Compounds of *Facio*, when it is not compounded with a Præposition; because *Fio*, is as it were the Passive of *Facio*.

Fero, fers, tuli, ferre, ferendi, ferendo, ferendum, latum, latu, ferens, laturus. To beare or suffer. So likewise his thirteene Compounds. *Affero, aufero, autefero, circumfero, confero, Defero, effero, infero, offero, perfero, præfero, refero, suffero.*

Feror, ferris vel ferre, latus sum vel sui, ferri, latus, ferendus. To be borne or suffered. So his compounds, which in number are equall with the Compounds of *Fero*.

Eo, is, ivi, ire, eundi, eundo, eundum, itum, itus, iturus, To goe.

Queo, quis, quivi, quire, queundi, queundo, queundum: quitum, quitu, quiens, quiturus. To may or can. Both which, with their Compounds are varied like verbs in, o, of the fourth Conjugation, saving that they make the Præterimperfect tense of the Indicative moode, *iban* and *quiban*, the Future tense, *ibo* and *quibo*, and their Gerunds, *eundi, eundo, eundum*, except *Ambio*.

The Compounds of *eo*, are sixteene, *Abeo, Adeo, Ambio, Anteeo: Circumeo, Coeo; Exeo: Ineo, Intereo, Introeo, Obeo, Pereo, Præeo, Prætereo, Redeo, Subeo.* *Queo* hath but one compound *Nequeo*.

Indi-

Indicative Moode.

Præsentense singular

Possum, I am able, *potes, potest.*
Volo, I am willing, *Vis, vult.*
Nolo, I am unwilling, *Nonvis, Nonvult.*
Malo, I am more willing, *mavis, mavult.*
Edo, I eate, *Edis vel es, edit vel est.*
Fio, I am made or done, *fis, fit.*
Fero, I beare or suffer. *Fers, fert.*
Feror, I am borne or suffered, *ferris vel ferre, fertur.*

Plurales

Possumus, we are able: *Potestis, possunt.*
Volumus, We are willing, *vultis, volunt.*
Nolumus, we are unwilling *nonvultis, nolunt.*
Malumus, we are more willing, *mavultis, malit.*
Edimus, we eat, *editis vel estis, edunt.*
Fimus, we are made or done, *fitis, fiunt.*
Ferimus, we bear or suffer *Fertis, ferunt.*
Ferimur, we are borne or suffered, *ferimini, feruntur.*

Præterimperfect tense singular.

Poteram,
Volebam,
Nolebam,
Malebam,
Edebam,
Fiebam,
Ferebam,
Ferebar, baris vel bare, batur. P. *hamur, bamini, bantur*

I was able.
as, at. Plural. *amus, atis, ant.*

Preterperfect tense singular

Potui, *Volui,* *Nolui,* *Malui,* *Edi,* *Tuli.* — *isti, it* Plur. *imus, istis, erunt vel êre.*
I have been able.

Factus, Latus, *sum vel fui, tus es vel fuisti, tus est vel fuit.* Plur. *ti sumus vel fuimus, ti estis vel fuistis, ti sunt, fuerunt vel fuêre.*

Præ-

I had been able.

Præterpluperfect tense singular.

Potueram, Volueram, Nolueram, } *Malueram, Ederam, Tuleram,* } *ras, rat,* Plural. *ramus, ratis, rant.*

Factus, Latus } *eram vel fueram, tus eras vel fueras, tus erat vel fuerat.* Plur. *tieramus vel fueramus, ti eratis vel fueratis, ti erant vel fuerant.*

Future tense singul.

Potero, ris, rit. Pluraliter, *poterimus, eritis, crunt.*

Volam, Nolam, Malam, } *Edam, Fiam, Feram,* } *es, et.* Plur *emus, etis, ent.*

Ferar, fereris vel ferere, feretur. Plural. *Feremur, feremini, ferentur.*

Possum, Volo, Malo, have no Imperative Moode.

Imperative Moode.

Noli nolito Pluraliter, *Nolite, nolitote.*

Præsent tense singular.

Es, esto, Ede, Edito, } *edat, esto, edito,* } P. *Edamus* { *edite, este, estote, editote,* } *edant, edunto.*

Fito tu { *Fiat, Fito.* } Pluraliter { *Fiamus,* } { *Fite, Fitote,* } { *Fiant, Fiunto.*

Fer, Ferto, { *Ferat, Ferto.* } Plur. *Feramus.* { *Ferte, Fertote,* } { *Ferant, Feruntо.*

Ferre, Fertor, { *Feratur, Fertor.* } Pl. *Feramur.* { *Ferimini, feriminor,* } { *Ferantur, feruntor.*

Subjunctive Moode.

Præsent tense singular *cùm*

- *Possim, Velim, Nolim, Malim,* — When I am able. — *is, it,* Pluraliter *cùm, imus, itis, int.*
- *Edam, Fiam, Feram,* — *as, at.* Plur. *cùm, amus, atis, ant.*
- *Ferar, raris vel rare, ratur.* Pl. *ramur, ramini, rantur.*

Præteimperfect tense singular *cùm*

- *Possem, Vellem, Nollem, Mallem,* — *Edissem, vel essem, Fierem, Ferrem,* — When I was able. — *es, et.* Plur. *cùm, emus, etis, ent.*
- *Ferrer, reris vel rere, retur.* Pl. *remur, remini, rentur.*

When I have been able.

Præterperfect tense singular, *cùm.*

- *Potuerim, Voluerim, Noluerim,* — *Maluerim, Ederim, Tulerim,* — *ris, rit,* Pluraliter *cùm, rimus, ritis, rint.*
- *Factus, Latus,* — *sim vel fuerim, tus sis vel fueris, tus sit vel fuerit.* Pl. *cùm, ti simus vel fuerimus, ti sitis vel fueritis, ti sint vel fuerint.*

When I had been able.

Preterpluperfect tense singular. *cùm.*

- *Potuissem, Voluissem, Noluissem,* — *Maluissem, Edissem, Tulissem,* — *ses, set.* Pluraliter *cùm, semus, setis, sent.*
- *Factus, Latus,* — *essem vel fuissem, tus esses vel fuisses, tus esset vel fuisset.* Plur. *cùm, ti essemus vel fuissemus, ti essetis vel fuissetis, ti essent vel fuissent.*

Futur.

When I shall or will be able.

Future tense singular cùm

Potuero, Voluero, Noluero, } *Maluero, Edero, Tulero,* } *ris, rit.* Plur. *cùm, rimus, ritis, rint.*

Factus, Latus, } *ero vel fuero, tus eris vel fueris, tus erit vel fuerit.* Pl. *cùm, ti erimus vel fuerimus, ti eritis vel fueritis, ti erunt vel fuerint.*

Infinitive Moode.

Present tense singular.

Posse, Velle, Nolle, Malle, } *Edere vel esse. Ferre. Fieri. Ferri.*

Præterimperf. præterperfect. Præterpluperfect tense.

Potuisse. Voluisse. Noluisse, Maluisse. } *Edisse. Tulisse. Factum esse vel fuisse. Latum esse vel fuisse.*

Future tense.

Esurum esse. Laturum esse. Factum iri, vel faciendum esse. Latum iri, vel ferendum esse.

Seeing the variation of *Regular* or *Irregular* compleat verbs, much depends upon the knowledge of the Præterperfect tense, and the Supines, the directions for both, come next to be handled: which may be divided into Rules concerning Verbs in, *o*, and Rules concerning verbs in, *or*.

Rules concerning verbs in, *o*, are such as concerne either the Præterperfect tense or the Supines, both

which are twofold. Thoſe which concerne the ſimple Præterfect tenſe and the ſimple Supine: and thoſe that doe concerne the compound Præterperfect tenſe, and the compound Supine. The rules that concerne the ſimple præterperfect tenſe, are diſtinguiſhed by the foure *Conjugations*.

The Firſt Conjugation.

As, in the Preſent tenſe makes, *avi*, in the Præterperfect tenſe, as *Amo, Amas, Amavi*. Except *Lavo, Lavi: Iuvo, Juvi: Seco, Secui: Mico, Micui: Tono, Tonui: Sono, Sonui: Cubo, Cubui: Do, Dedi: Sto, Steti: Neco, Necui: Plico, Plicui: Frico, Fricui: Crepo, Crepui: Veto, Vetui: Domo, Domui*: which fixe laſt ſometimes make, *avi*.

The Second Conjugation.

Es, in the Preſent tenſe makes *ui*, in the Præterperfect tenſe, as *Doceo, Doces, Docui*. Except, *Iubeo, Iuſſi: Mulceo, Mulſi: Luceo, Luxi: Spondeo, Spondi: Sedeo, Sedi: Video, Vidi: Suadeo, Suaſi. Rideo, Riſi*. With theſe three that double in their Præterperfect tenſe, which is done by repeating the firſt conſonant of the Preſent tenſe, with one of theſe vowells, *e, o*, as *Pendeo, pependi: Mordeo, momordi: Tondeo, totondi*. And thoſe that have *l*, or r, before *geo*, which turne *geo*, into *ſi*, as *Mulgeo, mulſi: Urgeo, urſi*: alſo *Frigeo, frixi: Lugeo, luxi: Augeo, auxi, Fleo*, which makes *Flevi: Leo, levi*: (and its compound *Deleo, delevi.*) *Pleo, plevi: Neo, nevi: Maneo, manſi: Torqueo, torſi: Hæreo, hæſi*: thoſe that end in *veo*, which make *vi*: as *Ferveo, fervi*: and *Cieo, Civi: Vieo, vievi*.

The

The Third Conjugation.

Verbs of this Conjugation change.

Into

- *Bo.* — *Bi.* as *Lambo, Lambi:* except *Scribo, Scripsi: Cumbo, Cubui.*
- *Co.*, *Cio.* — *Ci.* as *Vinco. vici.* / *Facio, feci.* Except *Dico dixi, Duco duxi.*
- *Do.*, *Dio.* — *Di.* as *Mando mandi.* / *Fodio fodi.* Except *Cedo cessi: Vado, Rado, Lædo, Ludo, Divido, Trudo, Claudo, Plaudo, Rodo,* which make, *si.*
- *Go.*, *Ho.*, *Ecto* — *Xi.* as *Iungo junxi.* / *Traho traxi.* / *Flecto flexi.* Except verbs having *r*, before *go*, which make, *si*, as *Spargo sparsi:* and *Lego legi, Ago egi, Tango tetigi, Frango fregi, Pango* to make a bargaine, *Pepigi.* to joyne, *Pegi.*
- *Lo.*, *Mo.*, *Vo.* — *üi.* as *Colo colui.* / *Vomo vomui.* / *Statuo statui.* Except, *Psallo* and *Sallo*, to Season, *Salli: Vello, Velli: Fallo, Fefelli: Cello, ceculi: Pello, pepuli: Emo, emi: Como, compsi: Promo, prompsi: Demo, dempsi: Sumo, sumpsi: Premo, pressi: Struo, struxi: Fluo, fluxi.*
- *No.*, *Ro.*, *Sco.*, *Vo.* — *Vi.* as *Sino, sivi.* / *Sero*, to sowe or plant *Sevi.* / *Pasco pavi.* / *Volvo volvi.*

Po.

Into

Except, *Temno, tempsi: Gigno, genui: Pono, posui: Cano, cecini: Sero* to set in order, *Serui: Uro, ussi: Gero, gessi: Curro, cucurri: Posco, popposci: Disco, didici: Conquiniſco, conquexi: Vivo, vixi.*

Po. *Psi.* as *Scalpo, ſcalpſi:* except *Rumpo, rupi: Strepo, ſtrepui.*

Quo. *Qui.* as *Linquo, liqui:* except *Coquo, Coxi.*

So. *Sivi.* as *Accerſo, accerſivi:* except *Faceſco, faceſſi: Viſo, viſi: Pinſo, pinſui.*

To. *Ti.* as *Verto, verti:* except *Mitto, miſi: Peto, petivi: Sterto, ſtertui: Meto, meſſui.*

Gio. *Gi* as *Fugio, fugi.*

Pio. *Pi.* as *Capio, cepi.* Except *Cupio, cupivi: Rapio, rapui: Sapio, ſapui.*

Rio. *Ri.* as *Pario, peperi.*

Tio. *Si,* as *Quatio, Quaſſi.*

Xo. *ïi* as *Texo, texui.*

Guo. *Xi.* as *Stinguo, ſtinxi:* obſolete, but his compounds in uſe *Diſtinguo, Extinguo, Inſtinguo, Reſtinguo.*

Except

The Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of this Conjugation, have *ivi,* in the Præterperfect tenſe, as *Audio, Audis, Audivi.*

Except { *Venio, veni. Raucio, rauſi. Farcio, farſi. Sarcio, ſarſi. Sepio, ſepſi. Sentio, ſenſi. Fulcio, fulſi. Haurio, hauſi. Vincio, Vinxi: Amicio, amicui. Cambio, campſi: Salio, Salui.*

Rules

Rules concerning the Compound Præterperfect tenſe.

The Compound Verbe hath the ſame Præterperfect tenſe, that the Simple Verbe hath.

Except

That the Compounds retaine not the Syllable, doubled in the Simple Præterperfect tenſe: unleſſe *Præcurro*, *Excurro*, *Compungo*, *Repungo*, and the Compounds of *Do*, *Diſco*, *ſto*, *Poſco*.

Plico compounded with *Sub* or a Noune, which makes only *avi*, as *Supplico*, *Multiplico*, *Suboleo*, which makes *Subolui*: *Expungo*, which makes only *Expunxi*.

The Compounds of *Do*, of the third Conjugation: as *Addo*, *Credo*, *Edo*, *Dedo*, *Reddo*, *Perdo*, *Abdo*, *Obdo*, *Condo*, *Indo*, *Trado*, *Prodo*, *Vendo*; which changing the Syllable retained, make, *didi*; except one Decompound *Abſcondo*, which caſts away the doubled ſyllable.

The Compounds of *Sto*, which changing the retained Syllable, make *ſtiti*.

Three generall Rules for the changing in Compoſition.

These ſimple Verbs, *Damno*, *Lacto*, *Sacro*, *Fallo*, *Arceo*, *Tracto*, *Fatiſcor*, *Gradior*, *Patior*, *Partio*, *Cando*, *Capto*, *Patro*, *Farcio*, *Scando*, *Mando*, *Spargo*, *Pario*; when they be compounded, change the firſt vowell of the Præſent and Præterperfect tenſe, into *i*, except *Pertracto*, *Retracto*, which doe not change. So the compounds of *Paſco* (beſides *Compeſco* and *Diſpeſco* which make *Peſcui*) The compounds of *Pario* doe change, but yet differ from their ſimple

Verb, both in the Conjugation and the Præterperfect tenſe, two whereof doe make *Comperi* and *Reperi*, and the reſt, *perüi*: and all of them are of the fourth Conjugation; the ſimple Verbe being of the third.

2 Theſe ſimple Verbs, *Habeo*, *Lateo*, *Salio*, *Statuo*, *Cado*, *Lædo*, *Pango pegi*, *Cano*, *Quæro*, *Cædo*, *Tango*, *Egeo*, *Teneo*, *Taceo*, *Sapio*, *Rapio*, & *Placeo* compounded, change the firſt vowell into *i*, in all tenſes.

Except { *Poſthabeo*, *Complaceo*, *Perplaceo*, *Depango*, *Oppango*, *Circumpango*, *Repango*.

The compounds of *Cano*, which doe change indeed, but make *üi*, in the Præterperfect tenſe, as *Concino Concinui*. The compounds of *Calco*, which change *a*, into *u*, in all tenſes.

The compounds of *Claudo*, *Cauſo*, *Quatio*, *Lavo*, which caſt away *a*, in all tenſes

3 Theſe ſimple Verbs, *Ago*, *Emo*, *Sedeo*, *Rego*, *Frango*, *Capio*, *Iacio*, *Lavo*, *Specio*, *Premo*, doe change the firſt vowell of the Preſent tenſe only into, *i*.

Except { *Coemo*, *Superſedeo*, *Perago*, *Satago*, *Circumago* two compounds of *Rego* (*Pergo*, *Surgo*) and two of *Ago* (*Cogo*, *Dego*) looſing the middle Syllable of the Preſent tenſe.

Facio which changes nothing, unleſſe it be compounded with a Præpoſition.

Lego compounded with *Ad*, *Per*, *Præ*, *Re*, *Sub*, *Trans*, which change nothing. His other compounds change the firſt vowell of the Preſent Tenſe into *i*, as *Intelligo*, *Diligo*, *Negligo*, which make *Lexi*, in the Præterperfect tenſe, all the reſt *Legi*.

Rules

Rules concerning the Simple Supine.

When the Præterperfect tenſe endeth in	*Bi.*	The Supine ends in *Tum.* as	*Bibi, Bibitum.*
	Mi.		*Emi, Emptum.*
	Ni.		*Veni, Ventum.*
	Pi.		*Cepi, Ceptum. Rupi, ruptũ. Cæpi, cæptũ.*
	Pſi.		*Scripſi, Scriptum.*
	Ti.		*Steti, ſtiti, ſtatũ.* Except *Verti, verſum.*
	Vi.		*Flavi, flatum.* Except *Venivi, vænũ.*

When the Præterperfect tenſe endeth in	*Ci.*	The Supine ends in *ctum* as	*Vici, victum.*
	Gi.		*Legi, lectum.*
	Qui.		*Liqui, lictum.*
	Xi.		*Vinxi, vinctum.*

Theſe five, *Finxi, minxi, pinxi, ſtrinxi, rinxi,* looſe n, *Flexi, plexi, fixi, fluxi,* have *Xum.*

When the Præterperfect tenſe ends in, *ŭi,* the Supines end in *itum,* as *Domui domitum.* Except firſt Verbs in *ŭi,* of *uo,* which make *utum,* as *exui, exutum:* But *Ruo, rui, ruitum.* Secondly, *Secui, ſectum. Necui, nectum. Fricui, frictum. Miſcui, miſtum. Amicui, amictum. Torrui, toſtum. Docui, doctum. Tenui, tentum. Conſului conſultum. Salui, ſaltum. Colui, cultum. Occului, occultum. Pinſui, piſtum. Rapui, raptum. Serui, ſertum. Texui, textum. Cenſui, cenſum Cellui, celſum Meſſui, meſſum. Patui, paſſum. Nexui, nexum Pexui, pexum.*

Rules

Rules of the Compound Supine.

The Compound Verb hath the ſame Supine that the Simple hath: as *Doctum*, *Edoctum*.

Except { *Tunſum* which is made *Tuſum*; and *Ruitum*, *rutum*. *Saltum*, *ſultum*. *Satum*, *ſitum*, *Statum* à *ſiſto*, *ſtitum*. *Datum*, *ditum*, in the compounds of *Do*, of the third Conjugation.

Captum, *Factum*, *Iactum*, *Raptum*, *Cantum*, *Partum*, *Sparſum*, *Carptum*, *Fartum*, which change *a*, into *e*.

The compounds of *Edo*, which have only *Eſum*, beſides *Comedo*, which makes, *eſum*, and *eſtum*. *Cognoſco*, which makes *Cognitum*: and *Agnoſco*, *agnitum*.

Of the Præterperfect tenſe of Verbs in *Or*.

ALl Verbs in, *Or*, are either Paſſives or Deponents, or Communes. Of the Præterperfect tenſe of Paſſives we have already ſpoken. Communes are very rare. And Verbs Deponents, whoſe Præterperfect tenſe differs from the common forme of the foure Conjugations, are here ſet downe. *Labor*, *lapſus*. *Patior*, *paſſus*. *Compatior*, *compaſſus*. *Perpetior*, *perpeſſus*. *Fateor*, *faſſus*. *Confiteor*, *confeſſus*. *Diffiteor*, *diffeſſus*. *Gradior*, *greſſus*. *Digredior*, *digreſſus*. *Fatiſcor*, *feſſus*. *Metior*, *menſus*. *Utor*, *uſus*. *Ordior* to weave, *orditus*; to begin, *orſus*. *Ulciſcor*, *ultus*. *Iraſcor*, *iratus*. *Reor*, *ratus*. *Obliviſcor*, *oblitus*. *Miſereor*, *miſertus*. *Loquor*, *locutus*. *Sequor*, *ſecutus*. *Experior*, *expertus*. *Paſciſcor*, *pactus*. *Nanciſcor*, *nactus*. *Indipiſcor*, *indeptus*. *Adipiſcor*, *adeptus*. of *Adi-*

Apiſcor, aptus. Queror, queſtus. Proficiſcor, profectus. Expergiſcor, experrectus. Comminiſcor, commentus. Naſcor, natus. Morior, mortuus. Orior, ortus.

Of Redundant Verbs.

Verbs are Redundant in the { Præterperfect tenſe only. / Supine only. / And in both.

Of the Active forme, as *Conniveo, connivi, & conixi. Parco, peperci, & Parci. Pungo, punxi, & pupugi*: with its two Compounds, *Compungo, Repungo: Præcurro, excurro*, two compounds of *Curro*: *Pango*, to make a bargaine, *pepigi*; to joyne, *pegi*; to ſing, *panxi*: *Pecto, pexui & pexi*: *Necto, nexui, & nexi. Vello, velli, & vulſi. Pluo, plui, & pluvi. Lino, Levi, lini, livi. Verro, verri & verſi.*

Of the Paſſive forme, whoſe Actives abound in the Participles of the Præter tenſe: as *Alor, Alitus & Altus. Tendor, tenſus & tentus. Lavor, lavatus, lautus & lotus. Comedor, comeſus & comeſtus. Miſcor, miſtus & mixtus. Torqueor, torſus & tortus. Fruor, fructus & fruitus. Nitor, niſus & nixus: Ordior*, to weave, *Orditus*; to begin, *Orſus.*

Of both Active and Paſſive forme, as *Cæno, cænavi & cænatus ſum. Titubo, titubavi & titubatus ſum. Iuro, juravi & juratus ſum. Prandeo, Prandi & pranſus ſum. Nubo, nupſi & nupta ſum. Mereor, merui & meritus ſum. Libet, libuit, libitum. Licet, licuit, licitum. Tædet, tæduit, tæſum. Pudet, puduit, puditum. Piget, piguit, pigitum eſt.*

Redundant in the Supine only, are, *Torqueo, torſi, torſum & tortum. Alo, alui, altum & alitum. Lavo, lavi, lautum, lotum & lavatum. Indulgeo, indulſi, in-*

indulſum

dulſum & indultum. Tendo, tetendi, tenſum & tentum. Comedo, comedi, comeſum & comeſtum: and the Compounds of *ſto*, as *Præſto, præſtiti, præſtitum & præſtatum. Pario, peperi, partum & partitum. Miſceo, miſcui miſtum & mixtum.*

Redundant in both, are *Poto, potavi & potatus ſum, potatum & potum. Careo, carui & caſſus ſum, caritum & caſſum. Sorbeo, Sorbui & ſorpſi, ſorbitum & ſorptum. Mulgeo, mulſi & mulxi, mulſum & mulctum: Oleo, olui & olevi, olitum & oletum. Capeſſo, capeſſi & capeſſivi, capeſſum & capeſſitum. Sapio, ſapui & ſapivi, ſapitum & ſapitum. Sancio, Sancivi & ſanxi, ſanctum & ſancitum. Fruor, fructus & fruitus, fructum & fruitum: Nitor, niſus & nixus ſum, niſum & nixum. Ordior,* to weave, *Orditus;* to begin, *orſus, orditum & orſum: Neco, necui & necavi, nectum & necatum. Plico, plicui & plicavi, plicitum & plicatum Frico, fricui & fricavi, frictum & fricatum. Domo, domui & domavi, domitum & domatum. Crepo, crepui & crepavi, crepitum & crepatum, Veto, vetui & vetavi, vetitum & vetatum.*

Of Defectives.

Defectives are of two ſorts { Leſſe. / Greater.

Leſſer Defectives, faileing in one or two things, are of foure ſorts.

Defectives in { Perſon only. / Præterperfect tenſe only. / Supine only. / Both Præterperfect tenſe & Supine.

Defectives

Defectives in Perſon only, are *Daris* and *Faris*, which want the firſt perſon of the Preſent tenſe only in all moodes.

Defectives in the Preterperfect tenſe only, are verbs paſſives, whoſe actives want their Supines, as *Metuor, Timeor.*

Defectives in the Supines only, are theſe, *Lambo, Mico micui. Rudo. Scabo. Parco, pepersi. Diſpeſco. Diſco. Poſco. Compeſco. Conquiniſco. Dego. Ango. Jugo. Lingo. Ningo. Satago. Pſallo. Volo. Nolo. Malo. Tremo. Strideo, ſtrido. Flaveo. Liveo. Aveo. Paveo. Conniveo. Ferveo.* The compounds of *Nuo*, as *Renuo*: of *Cado*, as *Decido*: except *Concido. Incido Occido. Recido*, which make, *Caſum*; alſo *Linquo. Luo. Metuo. Cluo. Frigeo. Calvo. Sterto. Timeo.* So *Turgeo. Luceo. Arceo.* (whoſe compounds have, *ercitum*) So of *Gruo*, as *Ingruo.* And whatſoever verbs Neuters of the ſecond Conjugation (as moſt of them are) making, *ui*, in the Præterperfect tenſe: except *Oleo. Doleo. Placeo. Taceo. Pareo. Careo. Noceo. Pateo. Lateo. Valeo* & *Caleo.*

Defectives in both Præterperfect tenſe and Supine, are, *Vergo. Ambigo. Gliſco. Fatiſco Polleo. Videor. Furo. Veſcor. Medeor. Liquor. Reminiſcor. Hiſco. Labo. Labaſco. Labaſcor.* Inceptives or Augmentatives in *Sco*, which come of Nounes, as *Pueraſco, Pinguеſco:* for thoſe that come of Verbs, borrow the Præterperfect tenſe, of the Verbs from whence they are derived, as *Ferveſco, fervi* of *ferveo. Tepeſco, tepui* of *Tepeo.* So doe *Ferio. Percuſſi*, of *Percutio. Meio, minxi*, of *mingo. Sido, Sedi*, of *Sedeo. Tollo, Suſtuli*, of *Suffero.* All Deſideratives, as *Lecturio. Scripturio*, except *Parturio Eſurio.*

Greater Defective are ſuch as want moſt of the Accidents

Accidents of a Verbe, amongſt which, thoſe that are uſuall are foureteene in number. 1 *Aio, ais, ait.* Pluraliter *aiunt.* Præterimp. *Aiebam, bas, bat. &c.* Preſens Optat. Potent. Subjunct *Aias, at.* Plural. *Aiamus, atis, ant.* Part. *Aiens.* 2 *Auſim, ſis, ſit.* Pl. *ſimus, ſitis, ſint.* 3 Indicat. *Salvebis.* Imper. *Salve ſalveto, Salvete ſalvetote.* Infin. *Salvere.* 4 *Ave avete, Avete, avetote. Avere.* 5 *Cedo Cedite.* 6 *Faxo faxis, xit, xint.* 7 *Forem, res, ret, rent. Fore.* 8 *Queſo, quæſumus.* 9 *Infit, Infiunt.* 10 *Inquio vel Inquam, inquis, inquit, Inquiunt. Inquiſti, Inquies, inquiet Inque, inquito: Inquiens.* 11 *Odi.* 12 *Cœpi.* 13 *Memini.* 14 *Novi,* which keepe the ſence of the *Præſent tenſe,* as well as of the Præterperfect tenſe, having no tenſe but the Præterperfect tenſe, and thoſe that come of it: Except *Memini,* which is uſed in the Second Perſon of the Imperative Moode, as *Memento, mementote.*

Of a Participle.

A Participle is a Part of Speech, variable, both Governing and Governed, ſo called becauſe it participates with a noune in number, caſe, gender, and Declenſion; and with a verbe in tenſe and ſignification;

There be ſeaven Accidents of a Participle
- Derivation.
- Compoſition.
- Signification.
- Number.
- Caſe.
- Gender.
- Declenſion.

Which

Which foure latter are the same with a noune Adjective.

The derivation and signification of Participles are set downe in their severall descriptions.

Their Composition is the same with the Verbs they come of, as *Admittens, Admissus, Admissurus, Admittendus.*

There be foure kinds of Participles { One of the Present tense. / An other of the Præter tense. / An other of the Future in, *rus.* / Another of the Future in *dus.*

A Participle of the Present tense, hath an Active, or Active like signification, with its English ending in, *ing*, as *loving, running*: and his latine in, *ans*, or *ens*, as *Amans, Currens*: And it is formed of the Præterimperfect tense of the Indicative Moode, by changing the last syllable into, *ns*: as *Amabã, Amans. Audiebam, audiens. Auxiliabar, auxilians. Poteram, potens.* But *Ibam* with his compounds into *Ens.*

A Participle of the Præter tense, hath commonly the Passive signification, with his English ending in, *d, t*, or *n*, as Loved, Taught, Slain, and his Latine in, *tus, sus, xus*, as *Amatus, visus, nexus:* and is formed of the Latter Supine by putting to, *s*, as *Lectu, Lectus*, except *mortuus.*

Participles of this tense coming of *Deponents* have commonly the Active signification, as *Hæc locutus*, having spoke these things: but some of these have both Active and Passive signification, because they come of Deponents, which heretofore have been verbs *communes*, as *Meditatus, Comitatus, Complexus, Confessus, &c.*

A Participle of the Future in *rus*, hath the Active or Active like signification, as *Amaturus*, to love or

And

about to love. *Cursurus*, to run, or about to run. And it is formed of the Latter Supine, by putting to *rus*, as *Doctu*, *Docturus*.

Some Verbs have the Supines, and yet want the Participle of the Future in *rus*, as *Cresco*, *Soleo*. And some want the Supines, which have the Future in *rus*, as *Moriturus*, *Osurus*. These Participles *Pariturus*, *Nasciturus*, *Arguiturus*, *Eruiturus*, *Oriturus*, *Futurus*, doe not retaine the *Analogy* of *Derivation*.

A Participle of the Future in *Dus*, hath alwaies the Passive signification, as *Amandus* to be loved, and it is formed of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Præsent tense, by changing, *tis*, into *dus*, as *Amantis*, *Amandus*. *Legentis*, *legendus*.

Some Participles of the Future in *Dus*, come of Verbs Neuters, as *Carendus*, *Pudendus*, *Pigendus*, *Vigilandus*, *Regnandus*. Participles of the Præsent tense are declined like nounes adjectives of one termination: as *Legens*, *legentis*: but *iens* (in use with *Cicero*) and his compounds, doe make *Euntis*, *eunti*, *&c.* in the oblique cases, except *Ambiens*, *ambientis*. Participles of other Tenses are varied like Nounes Adjectives of three terminations, as *Doctus docta doctum*: *Docturus*, *ra*, *rum*: *Docendus*, *da*, *dum*.

Of an Adverbe.

An Adverbe is a part of Speech, invariable, only governing and not governed, added to words to declare their signification; Principally and frequently to a Verbe: as *quam celeriter fecit*, how quickly hath he dispatched it. Sometimes to a *Noune*, as *homo egregiè*

impu-

impudens, a man exceedingly impudent. Sometimes to another Adverb, as *Parùm honestè se gessit*, he behaved himselfe scarce honestly.

There be three Accidents of an Adverb { Derivation. Composition. Comparison.

1 Every Adverb is either { Primitive, or Derivative. Simple, or Compound.

Primitive, as *Cras*, *Heri*.

Derivative is eight fold.

1 Substantivall as *Vesperi* of *Vesper*.
2 Adjectivall, as *Fortiter* of *Fortis*,
3 Pronominall, as *Eòdem* of *Idem*.
4 Verball, as *Amâbo* of *Amo*.
5 Participiall, as *Doctè* of *Doctus*.
6 Adverbiall, as *Forsitàn* of *forsan*.
7 Conjunctionall, as *Quando* of *Quàm*.
8 Præpositionall, as *Intùs* of *In*.

Simple, as *Iàm*.

Componnd Adverbs are many fold, but may be reduced to 22. heads.

1 It is compounded of two Substantives, as *Ædepol*, of *Ædes* and *Pollux*.
2 With a Substantive as *Sæpenumerò* of *Sæpè* and *numerus*.
3 Of a Substantive and a Præposition, as *Dextrorsùm*, of *Dextra* and *Versus*.
4 With an Adjective, as *Nimirùm*, of *Ni*, and *Mirum*.
5 Of an Adjective and a Substantive, as *Quotidiè* of *Quotus* and *Dies*.

6 Of an Adjective and a Verbe, as *Omnifariàm* of *Omnis* and *Fari*.
7 With a Pronoune set before, as *Istìc*, of *Iste*, *hic*.
8 With a Pronoune set after, as *Ibidèm*, of *Ibi* and *Idem*.
9 Of a Pronoune and Præposition, and a Substantive, as *Quàmobrem*, of *Quam*, *Ob*, *Rem*.
10 Of a Pronoune put before, and a Præposition, as *Quapropter* of *Qua* and *Propter*.
11 Of a Pronoune put after and a Prepoſition, as *Interea*, of *Inter* and *ea*,
12 With a Verbe as, *Ubivis*, of *Ubi*, and *Vis*.
13 Of two Verbs, as *Scilicet*, of *Scio*, and *Licet*.
14 Of a Participle and a Substantive, as *Perendiè*, *quasi perempto die*.
15 Of an Adverb, a Substantive, and an Adjective, as *Nudiustertiùs* of *Nunc*, *Dies*, *Tertius*.
16 Of two Adverbs, as *Iamdudum* of *Iam* and *dudum*.
17 Of a Conjunction and a Verbe, as *Sodes*, of *Si* and *Audes*.
18 With a Præposition set before, as *Affabrè*, of *Ad*, and *Fabrè*.
19 With a Præposition put after, as *Aliorsùm*, of *Alio* and *Versum*.
20 Of a Præposition and a Substantive, as *Interdiù*, of *Inter* and *Dies*.
21 With an Interjection, as *Ehodùm*, of *Eho* and *Dum*.
22 With a Syllabicall adjection, as *Parumper*, *ubiq̃*.

2 Adverbs are divided according to the variety of their significations into 30. heads.

Some be Adverbs of

Some

Some be Adverbs of

Time, as *Nunc*, time present. *Heri*, time past. *Cras*, time to come. *Cum* when. an indefinite time. *Olim*, all three times.
Place, as *Hic*, in a place. *Hinc*, from a place. *Huc*, to a place. *Horsum*, towards a place.
Number, as *Semel*, *Bis*.
Order, as *Inprimis*, *Deinde*, *Denig.*
Asking, as *Cur*, *Quare*.
Affirming, as *Næ*, *Profectò*.
Denying, as *Non*, *Haud*.
Exhorting, as *Eja*, *Age*, *Amabò*.
Forbidding, as *Ne*.
Restraining, as *Quatenus*, *Quoad*.
Wishing, as *Utinam*, *Osi*
Excludeing, as *Duntaxat*, *Solùm*.
Quantity, as *Multùm*, *Parùm*.
Denied Ioneneſſe, as *Non solùm*.
Parting, as *Seorsim*, *Sigillatim*.
Diverſity, as *Aliter*, *Secus*.
Chooſeing, as *Satiùs*, *Potiſſimùm*.
Correcting, as *Immò*, *Potius*.
A thing not finiſhed, as *Fermè*, *Penè*.
Granting, as *Licet*, *Eſtò*.
Shewing, as *En*, *Ecce*.
Extending, as *Valde*, *Nimis*.
Remitting, as *Vix*, *ægrè*.
Divideing, as *Bifariam*, *Trifariam*.
Explaineing, as *Nimirum*, *Scilicet*.
Doubting, as *Forſan*, *Forſitan*.
Chance, as *Fortè*, *Fortuitò*.
Likeneſſe, as *Sic*, *Sicut*.
Compareing, as *Tàm*, *Quàm*.
Quality, as *Benè*, *Malè*.

The third Accident of an Adverbe is Compa. rison.

Adverbs that are compared, come of Adjectives, and having their English in *ly*, are called Adverbs of Quality, except some few of Quantity. Those that come of Adjectives of three terminations, have their Latine in, *è*, *Benè*, *Doctè*; sometimes in, *ò*, as *Rarò*, and Sometimes in *er*, as *Firmitèr*. And those that come of Adjectives, of one or two terminations, have their Latine ending in, *ter*, as *Felicitèr*, *Fortitèr*. And they are thus Compared.

Dignè, *Dignius*, *Dignissimè*. *Rarò*, *Rarius*, *Rarissimè*. *Firmitèr*, *firmius*, *firmissimè*. *Fortitèr*, *Fortius*, *Fortissimè*.

Of a Conjunction.

A Conjunction is a part of Speech, invariable, only governing and not governed, that joyneth words and sentences togither.

There be three Accidents of a Conjunction { *Derivation.* *Composition.* *Order.*

There be two divisions of a *Conjunction*.

1 Every Conjunction is either { Primitive, or Derivative. Simple, or Compound.

Primitive, as *Nam*.

Derivative is sixe fold

1 Substantivall, as *Modò*, of *Modus*.

2 Adjectivall, as *Utrùm* of *Uter*.
3 Pronominall, as *Quia* of *Qui*.
4 Verball, as *Eſtò* of *Sum*.
5 Adverbiall, as *Tamen* of *Tàm*.
6 Conjunctionall, as *Autem* of *Aut*.

Simple, as *Et*.

Compound is ten fold.

1 Compounded with a Pronoune, as *Atquê*, of *At* and *Qui*.
2 With a Verb, as *Quamvis*, of *Quàm* and *vis*.
3 Of a Pronoune and an Adverbe, as *Ideò*, of *Is* and *eò*.
4 Of a Præpoſition, and a Pronoune ſet before, as *Idcirco* of *Id*, and *Circa*.
5 Of a Præpoſition, and a Pronoune ſet after, as *Propterea*, of *Propter* and *Ea*.
6 With an Adverbe put before, as *Aliôquin*, of *Alio* and *quin*.
7 With an Adverbe put after, as *Etiam* of *Et* and *Iam*. *Sin* of *Si* and *ne*.
8 With another Conjunction, as *Veruntamen*, of *Verùm* and *Tamen*.
9 With it ſelfe, as *Quamquam*, of *Quam* and *quam*.
10 With a Præpoſition, as *Præterquam* of *Præter* and *Quam*.

2 Conjunctions are divided according to the variety of their ſignifications into twelve heads.

Conjunctions are
- Copulatives, as *Et*, *Que*, *Ac*, *Atq*, *Quoq*, *Etiam*, *Nec*, *Neq*.
- Diſjunctives, as *Aut*, *Ve*, *Vel*, *Seu*, *Sive*.
- Derivatives, as *Sed*, *At*, *Aſt*, *Atqui*, *Autem*, *Cæterùm*, *Verò*, *Quin*, *Verùm*.
- Cauſalls, as *Ut*, *Nam*, *Namq*, *Enim*, *Etenim*,

Conjunctions are

Quod, Quia, Quippe, Quoniam, Siquidem, Quando, Quandoquidem, Uti, Quo.

Conditionalls, as *Si, Sin, Modò, Dummodò.*

Exceptives, as *Ni, Nisi, Aliôqui,* before a consonant. *Aliôquin,* before a vowell. *Præterquam.*

Interrogatives, as *Ne. An. Utrum. Necne. Anne, Nonne.*

Illatives, as *Ergò. Ideò. Igitur. Itaq. Idcircò. Quare. Quamobrem. Quapropter. Quocirca. Proindè Proin. Propterea.*

Adversatives, as *Etsi Quamquam. Quamvis. Quamlibet. Libet Estò Etiamsi. Tametsi.*

Redditives, as *Tamen, Attamen, Veruntamen.*

Diminutives, as *Saltèm, Nedùm.*

Electives, as *Quàm,* &c.

Some Conjunctions are so like Adverbs, that they can hardly be distinguished, but by their significations; in respect of the variety whereof, one and the selfe same word, may not only be referred to diverse heads of the same part of Speech as *Cum* both, to a Conjunction *Copulative,* and *Cùm* seeing that, to a Conjunction *Causall;* but also to severall parts of speech, as *modò* only, an Adverb. *Modò* so that, a Conjunction Conditionall. But no word can be referred to three parts of speech, save *Cùm,* and *Versus- Cum* when, is an Adverb of time. *Cùm* seeing that, a Conjunction Causall. *Cum* with, a Præposition.

The third Accident of a Conjunction is Order, in respect of which, a Conjunction is threefold. *Præpositive, Subjunctive,* and *Commune.*

Præpositives are those that be set before, being the first words of a sentence, or of a clause, the part of

of a sentence; being in number 57. such as these. *Nam. Quare. Ac. Ast. Atq. Et. Aut. Vel Nec. Neq. Si Quin. Sed. Verum. Sin. Seu. Sive. Ni. Nisi.* and all the rest, save the eight Subjunctive, and twelve Commune.

Subjunctives are those, that be set after, being commonly the second, sometimes the third, and seldome the fourth word of a Sentence. As *Quoq. Autem, Verò Enim. Saltem. Que. Ne. Ve.* Which three last are alwaies joyned to the end of a word, and are called *Enclitick* Conjunctions, because they incline their accent.

Communes are those that may indifferently be set before or after (*i*), may be the first or second words of a sentence, as *Etiam. An. Ergo. Ideo. Igi ur. Itaq. Propterea. Quanquam. Quamlibet. Quamvis. Licet. Tamen.*

Of a Præposition.

A Præposition is a Part of Speech, variable governing and governed. Most commonly set before other parts, either in apposition, as *Ad patrem*, or else in composition, as *Indoctus*.

There be two Accidents of it { Derivation. Composition.

1 Every Præposition is either { Primitive. Derivative. Simple, or Compound.

Primitive and Simple; as *Ab. Ad.*

Derivative, as *Circiter*, of *Circa*. and Compound, as *Abſq;. Adverſus*.

2 Præpoſitions are divided according to the variety of their uſe, which is foure-fold.

1 In Appoſition only, in which uſe there are 22. as *Apud. Adverſus. Adverſum. Citra. Circa. Erga. Intra. Infra. Juxta. Ponè. Secundum. Ultra. Circiter. Secus. Verſus. Penes. Coram. Clam. Palam. Sine. Abſq;. Tenus.*

2 In Compoſition only, in which uſe are, ſixe, as *Am. Di. Dis. Re. Se. Con.*

3 In both Appoſition, and Compoſition, in which uſe are, 28. as *Ad. Ante. Cis. Circum. Contra. Extra. Inter. Ob. Per. Prope. Propter. Poſt. Trans. Præter. Supra. A. Ab. Abs. Cum. De. E. Ex. Pro. Præ. In. Sub. Super. Subter.*

4 In Tranſpoſition or Poſtpoſition, in which uſe, are *Verſus, Penes, Tenus, Cum, Uſq;, Per, &c.* by the figure *Apoſtrophe*.

Præpoſitions put without their Caſe, are turned into Adverbs, as

——— *Coràm, quem quæritis Adſum.*
Troius Æneas. ———

Of an Interjection.

An Interjection is a Part of Speech, invariable, governing, not governed, which betokeneth a ſuddain paſſion of the minde, under an imperfect voice.

There be two Accidents of an Interjection, *Derivation* and *Compoſition*.

Every

Every Interjection is either { Primitive. Derivative. Simple, and Compound.

Primitive and Simple, as *Ve. Oh.*
Derivative as *Apage*, of *Apago* greeke.
Compound, as *Apagesis*, of *Apage* and *Sis.*
Interjections are divided according to the severall suddaine expressions of the mind into foureteene Heads.

Of him that { Rejoyceth, as *Evax, Iô.*
Grieveth, as *Heu, Hei, Ah, Eheu.*
Marvaileth, as *Papæ.*
Disdaineth, as *Hem, Vah.*
Shunneth, as *Apage. Phy.*
Praiseth, as *Euge.*
Scorneth, as *Hui.*
Exclaimeth, as *Proh. Ô.*
Curseth, as *Malùm.*
Threatneth, as *Væ.*
Laugheth, as *Ha, ha, he.*
Forbiddeth a thing unawares, as *Atat, ehem.*
Calleth, as *Eho, ho, heus.*
Injoyneth silence, as *Au.*

One and the selfe same word in respect of the various motions of the mind, may be referred to diverse heads, as *Hei*, sometimes of him that praiseth, as *Hei noster, laudo. Terent.* Sometimes of him that feareth or grieveth, as *Hei vereor nequid Andria apportet mali. Terent.* So *Iô*, sometimes of him that rejoyceth, as *iô Pæan, & iô bis dicite Pæan! Ovid.* Sometimes of him that grieveth: as *Uror, iô remove sæva Puella faces. Tibul.*

THE SECOND PART of Grammar, is *REGIMENT.*

VVHich is two fold { Plaine, and / Figurative.

Plaine Regiment, is a putting and joyning togither of the Parts of Speech amongſt themſelves, according to the true reaſon of Grammar. Which likewiſe is two fold.

The Regiment of { Conveniency. / Conſequency.

The Regiment of Conveniency, is when there is a *rection* joyned with *Concordancy*, for in the very agreement it ſelfe we may obſerve a governance and dependancy, the Adjective depending on the Subſtantive, and the Verb ruled by the Nominative caſe: for we know not how to perſonate the Verb, till we know the perſon of the Nominative caſe.

The Regiment of Conſequency is, when there is a *Rection* joyned with a *diſcrepancy* of the words: for in this Regiment, the word governing and the word governed are diſcrepant and diverſe the one from the other, and moſt commonly the latter followes the former

former, unleſſe it be a Relative, an Interrogative, or an Indefinite, and ſometimes another word for the Relatives ſake, as *Cæleſtis ira quos premit miſeros facit, humana nullos. Seneca. Honores quorum cupiditate multi inflammantur, quidam contemnunt. Cicero.*

There be two Concords. The firſt is the Conveniency of the Adjective with the Subſtantive. The Second of the Verb with the Nominative caſe.

The Adjective, whether it be Noune, Pronoune, or Participle, agreeth in Caſe, Gender and Number with the Subſtantive, whether a variable word or invariable, one or moe words ſupplying the place thereof. A Noune variable, as *Rara avis in terris nigroq; ſimillima cygno. Ovid.* A Pronoune, as *Cauſa mea eſt melior, qui non contraria fovi. Idem.* here the Antecedent Subſtantive to *qui*, is *Ego*, included in the Poſſeſſive *mea*. A Participle, as *Scripta cum mea nemo legat vulgo recitare timentis. Meos vidiſti flentis ocellos*, and the Subſtantive to *flentis*, is *mei*, included in the poſſeſſive *noſtros*, *Horat.* here the Subſtantive to *timentis*, is *mei*, underſtood in the *Poſſeſſive*, *mea* Theſe examples are to be added to the former of a Pronoune. *Eia haud veſtrum eſt iracundos eſſe, Terent.* there the Subſtantive to *iracundos*, is *vos*, implyed in the poſſeſſive *Veſtrum Omnes laudare fortunas meas qui filium haberem tali ingenio præditum. Terent.* An invariable word, as *Nil mortalibus arduum. Horat* One word, as *Scire tuum nihil eſt, niſi te Scire hoc ſciat alter. Pers.* here the Infinitive moode *Scire* is the Subſtantive to *tuum*. Moe words, as *Sed eorum partim in pompâ, partim*

tim in acie, illustres esse voluerunt. Cicero, there an Adverbe with a Genitive case, to wit *partim eorum*, is the Substantive to *illustres*. *In tempore ad eam veni, quod omnium rerum est primum, Terent*, here the whole clause, to wit, *in tempore ad eam veni*, is the Antecedent substantive to *quod*.

The Verb agreeth in Number and Person with the Nominative case, whether it be a variable word or invariable, one word or moe bearing the roome thereof. Variable as *Nunquam sera est ad bonos mores via. Sen.* Invariable as, *Dic mihi cras istud Posthume quando venit. Mart.* One word, *viz.* the Infinitive Moode, as *Præmonere est præmunire, Cato.* moe words *viz.* the whole clause, as *Legere & non intelligere est negligere, Idem.* An adverbe with a Genitive case, as *eorum autem ipsorum partim ejusmodi sunt, ut ad universos cives pertineant, partim ad singulos attingant. Cicero.* The whole clause as

Adde quod ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes,
Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros.

Τεχνικῶς, by vertue of Art, any word or words may supply the place of a Substantive, of the Nominative, and the Accusative case: of the Nominative, as the præcedent examples sufficiently declare: of the Accusative, as *Matutinum portat ineptus Ave. Mart. Quis expedivit Psittaco suum χαίρε. Persius.*

The Regiment of a Pronoune, seems altogither to be supervacaneous, being in every respect correspondent to that of a Noune, whether Substantive or Adjective: all the doubt is, whether *Qui* be a Pronoune Substantive or Adjective, which is easily removed: for besides many other reasons, one seems invincible, to prove it to be an Adjective: For as other Adjectives, coming between two Substantives,

agree

agree with the former, and sometimes with the latter, in Case, Gender, and Number; as *Indus omnium fluvinum est maximus* or *maximum. Cicero. Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda* or *dicendus, Idem.* So *qui* is used, as *Homines tuentur illum globum, qui* or *quæ terra dicitur, Cicero. Est locus in Carcere qui* or *quod tullianum appellatur, Salust. Accentus quos* or *quas Græci Prosodias vocant: Quintil. Ad eum locum qui vel quæ Pharsalia appellatur. Cæsar.* Now it is an improper speech to say a Substantive agreeth with a Substantive, in Case Gender and Number: *Qui* doth always rehearse the Antecedent Substantive, wherewith it agreeth, being usually understood, but sometimes expressed, as *Sed tu causam suscepisti antiquiorem memoriâ tuâ; quæ causa ante mortuo esti; quàm tu natus esses, Cicero. Ad quam rem attulimus, Idem. Quâ re cognitâ, Iustin. Diem instare, quo die frumenta metiri oporteret, Cæsar. Quibus itineribus & Quibus in tabulis &c. Idem.*

The Rection of a Substantive.

When two Substantives come togither signifying diverse things, the latter is usually put in the Genitive Case, and is governed of the former, as *Crescit amor nummi quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. Iuvenal.* The rule admits of seaven exceptions.

1 Sometimes the two Substantives are put in the same case by *Apposition*, as *Et genus & formam Regina pecunia donat, Horat. Ignavum fucos pecus à præsepibus arcent. Virg.*

2 Some

2 Sometimes the former ſubſtantive governes a Dative in ſtead of a Genitive, as *Per patris oſſa tui, patrui mihi plurimus oro, Ovid. Urbi pater eſt*, is juſtly refuſed, becauſe that is no good example, that admits of an evaſion: for *Urbi* may be governed of *eſt*, as well as of *Pater*.

3 An Adjective uſed Subſtantively in the Neuter gender, governes a Genitive caſe like a ſubſtantive; as *Quantum quiſq; ſuâ nummorum ſervat in arcâ, tantum habet & fidei. Iuven.*

4 Verball Subſtantives ſometimes governe the caſes of their Verbs. Verballs in *tio*, as *Abalienatio rei eſt traditio alteri, Cicero. Iuſtitia eſt obtemperantia Scriptis Legibus, Idem. Quid tibi hanc curatio eſt rem? Plaut.* Other Verballs, as *Ecce tibi ſtatus noſter, Cicero. Adeam rem uſum eſt hominem aſtutum, Plaut. Opulento homini ſervitus hæc magis dura eſt. Plaut.*

5 The praiſe or diſpraiſe of a thing ſometimes cauſeth the latter ſubſtantive to be uſed in the Ablative caſe, depending on the former. Of praiſe, as *Mulier egregiâ formâ, ætate integrâ, Terent. Sunt mihi bis ſeptem præſtanti corpore Nymphæ, Virg.* Of the diſpraiſe, *Virginem ſparſo ore, adunco naſo, Terent. Conſul ipſe parvo & pravo animo, Cicero.*

6 Theſe ſubſtantives *Opus* and *Uſus* being Latine for neede, require an Ablative caſe, as *Autoritate tuâ nobis opus eſt, Cicero. Nihil iſtâc opus eſt arte, Terent. Viginti jam uſus eſt filius argenti minis. Plaut. Arma acri facienda viro, nunc viribus uſus. Virg.*

7 The cauſe and manner of a thing ſometimes cauſeth the latter ſubſtantive to be uſed in the Ablative caſe, depending on the former. The cauſe as, *Sum tibi natura parens:* the manner, as *Præceptor conſiliis,*

consilii, Cicero. Nomine Arbactus, Iustin. Ibi casu Rex erat Ptolomæus, puer ætate. Cæsar.

The Rection of an Adjective.
Governing a Genitive case.

Adjectives signifying, desire, neglect, knowledge, ignorance, remembrance, forgetfulnesse, likenesse, unlikenesse, plenty, want, care, carelesnes, feare, confidence, also participation, partition, measure, bounty, innocence, property, passion, and such like governe a genitive case.

Desire as *Est natura hominum novitatis avida, Plin.* Neglect, as *Cæterarum rerum socordem, Terent.* Knowledge as, *Iuris legumq; peritus, Horat.* Ignorance as, *Nescia mens hominum fati, sortisq; futuræ, Virg.* Remembrance as, *Fortunæ memorem te decet esse meæ, Ovid* Forgetfulnesse as, *Iuvenca immemor herbæ, Virg.* Likenesse as, *Sæpe solet similis filius esse Patris, Ovid.* Unlikenesse as, *Antonius saturavit se sanguine dissimilium sui civium. Cicero.* Plenty as, *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor, Ovid. Lucus in urbe fuit mediâ, lætissimus umbræ, Virg. Fertilis hominum frugumq; Gallia. Liv.* Want as, *Vis consili expers mole ruit suâ, Horat. Sæculum virtutis sterile, Tacitus.* Care as, *Calamitosus est animus futuri anxius, Seneca.* Carelesnesse as *Dum vetera extollimus recentium incuriosi. Tacitus.* Feare as, *Timidusq; procellæ, Horat. Illæ intus trepidæ rerum, Virg.* Confidence as, *Mens interrita lethi, Ovid. Fidens animi, atq; in utrumq; paratus. Virg.* Also parti-

Participation, as *Nunc me compotem voti facis, Seneca. Participem artis & operum, Cicero. Illarum rerum affines, Terent.* Partition, as *Quem noſtrum ignorare arbitraris? Cicero.* (In every degree of compariſon, as *Multæ etiam iſtarum arborum meâ manu ſunt ſitæ. Cic. O major juvenum! Horat. Minimas rerum diſcordia turbat, Lucan.*) Meaſure as, *Areas latas pedum denûm, longas pedum quinquagenûm facito, Columella.* Bounty, as *Vini Somniq; benignus, Horat. Pecuniæ liberales, Saluſt.* Innocency as, *Inſontes conſilii publici, Livius. Integer vitæ, ſceleriſq; purus, Horat.* Property as, *Cerebri felicem aiebam. Horat. Animi ferox. Tacit. Fœmina ingens animi, Id.* Paſſion as, *Ut falſus eſt animi, Terent. Si quis tam cæcus animi eſt. Quintil.* Such like as, *Manifeſtam mendacii, Plaut. Ferox ſceleris, Tacitus. Regna tui fidiſſima, Virg. Utinam te non ſolum vitæ, ſed etiam dignitatis meæ ſuperſtitem reliquiſſem, Cicero.*

Proprius, communis, Alienus, immunis, ſometimes governe a Genitive caſe, as *Stoicorum proprium, Cicero. Commune animantium omnium, Idem. Alieni conſilii & dignitatis, Saluſt. Vobis immunibus hujus, eſſe mali dabitur, Ovid. Curvi immunis aratri, Idem.*

Dignus, Indignus, Contetus, Extorris, ſeldome govern a Genitive caſe, as *Militia eſt operis altera digna tui, Ovid. Deſcendam magnorum haudquaquam indignus avorum, Virg. Scythæ contenti victoriæ, Iuſtin. Illum oro extorrem regni, belloq; fugatum. Redde mihi, Statius.*

Verballs in *ax*, governe a genitive caſe, as *Tempus edax rerum, Ovid. Virtus eſt vitiorum fugax, Seneca.*

Participialls governe a genitive caſe in all degrees of compariſon; as *Pulveris atq; ſolis patiens, Horat.*

Taurus aratri patiens, Ovid. Impatiens antè laboris eram, Idem. Non illo quisquam melior nec amantior æqui. Virg. —— justissimus unus,
Vir fuit, aut illâ reverentior ulla Deorum.
Qui fuit in Teucris, & servantissimus æqui. Virg.

A Dative.

Adjectives signifying Profit or Disprofit, Likeneſſe or unlikeneſſe, Submiſſion, Pleaſure, or Reference to any thing, governe a Dative caſe. Profit as *Sis bonus & felix, tuis. Virg. Infirmo capiti fons aptus, idoneus alvo, Horat.* Disprofit, as *Turba gravis patì, placidæq; inimica quieti, Martial.* Likeneſſe as, *Tydidem ſuperis parem, Horat. Simia quam ſimilis, turpiſſima beſtia nobis. Par virtuti oratio, Cicero.* Like as, *Qui color albus erat, nunc eſt contrarius albo. Ovid. Quod illi cauſæ maximè eſt alienum. Cicero. Non aliena rationi, Idem.* Submiſſion and Pleaſure, as *Omnibus eſt ſupplex, ſolis jucundus amicis, Martial.* Reference to any thing, as *Cændida veſtra domus caſæ contermina noſtræ. Ovid.*

Verballs in *bilis*, doe governe a Dative caſe, as *Mors nulli exorabilis, Livi.*

Hei mihi quod nullis amor eſt medicabilis herbis. Ov.
Nulli penetrabilis aſtro lucus erat: Statius.

Pervius is uſed ſometimes like theſe verballs, as *Pectora nulli pervia culpæ, Ovid. Nulli pervia vento, Id. Non ſunt ora pervia verbis, Virg.*

Adjectives in *bundus* governe the caſe of their Verb, as *Ubertim flebam carnificem imaginabundus, Apulei. Multi numero mirabundi ad hoſtiam confluebant, Idem.*

An

An Accusative.

Adjectives implying a Passion, or Property, governe an Accusative case, as

Deiphobum vidi lacerum crudeliter ora: Virg.
Omnia Mercurio similis vocemq́ coloremq́: Id.
Bellona saucia pectus. Tibullus.
Cætera egregium. Livi.
Sanè cætera pater familias, & prudens, & attentus, unâ in re minùs consideratus, Cicero
Quantus erat cornu, cui pila taurus erat. Mart.

Adjectives governe an Accusative case of the nature of greatnesse, as *Fossam viginti pedes latam ducit, Cæsar. Arbores duos pedes crassæ,* Cato. *Gnomon septem pedes longus umbram non amplius quatuor pedes longam reddit, Plin.*

An Ablative.

Adjectives implying a passion or property governe an Ablative case, as

Crine ruber, niger ore, brevis pede, lumine luscus. Mart.

Adjectives Verballs governe an Ablative case like their Verbs, as

Non gemmis, neq́ purpurâ venale, nec auro. Hor.
Quod non opus est, asse carum est. Seneca.

Adjectives signifying Plenty or Want, doe governe an Ablative case, Plenty as, *Amor, & melle, & felle est fœcundissimus. Plaut. Macte virtute puer, Virg. Macte* (that is) *magis aucte. Animus culpâ plenus semet timet, Seneca. Forumq́ litibus orbum, Horat. Viduus pharetrâ, Idem. Epistola inanis re aliqua, Cicero.*

Adjectives of the Comparative degree governe an Ablative case, the signe *then* being prefixed to it, as

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum, Horat. Tanto virginibus præstantior omnibus Herse, Ovid. Asperius nihil est humili cum surgit in Altum, Claudian.

Adjectives governe an Ablative case, of the Cause, Instrument, Manner, and Measure of exceeding. Cause, as *Deteriores omnes sumus licentiâ, Terent.* Instrnment, as *Quem deinde Cloanthus Consequitur, melior remis, Virg.* Manner as *facie magis quam factis ridiculus, Cicero. Naturâ tenacissimi sumus eorum quæ rudibus annis percepimus, Quintil. Trojanus origine Cæsar. Virg.* Measure of exceeding, as *Procella quò plus habet virium, hoc minus temporis, Seneca. Quanto doctior es, tanto tegeras submissius, Cicero. Omne animi vitium tanto conspectius in se Crimen habet, quanto major qui peccat habetur, Iuv. Is quæstus nunc est multo uberrimus. Ter.*

Dignus, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, governe an Ablative case, as *Qui meretur ut dignus præmio, Terent. Simplicitas digna favore fuit, Ovid. Dignum laude virum musa vetat mori, Horat. Indigna homine dubitatio, Cicero. Indigna nostro genere, Idem. Qui filium haberem tali ingenio præditum, Terent. Atq; oculis capti fodere cubilia Talpæ, Virg.* (*Captus* is seldome an Adjective.) *Sorte tuâ contentus abi, Idem Extorrem urbe, domo, Penatibus, Livius.*

Adjectives governe an Ablative case of the measure of Greatnesse, as *Fons latus pedibus tribus, altus triginta, Columella.*

The

The Rection of a Verb governing a Nominative case.

Verbs Substantives, as *Sum, forem, fio, existo:* Verbs Passives of calling, as *Dicor, Appellor,* &c. Verbs like unto them, as *Scribor, Salutor, Habeor, Existimor,* &c. Also verbs of Gesture as, *Incedo, Curro, Videor,* &c. Will require a Nominative case after them, as *Penelope conjux semper Ulyssis ero. Ovid. Læsa patientia fit furor. Seneca. Dux eligitur, Præfectus constituitur. Iust. Quicquid, cui dominus inscriberis, apud te est, tuum non est, Seneca. Protinus ut redeas facta videbor anus, Ovid. Ast ego quæ Divûm incedo Regina Virg.* The Infinitive of these Verbs will have the same case after, that they have before them, as *Cæsar amat dici pater patriæ. Horat. Verum est eventum stultorum esse Magistrum. Livius. Cui primùm contingit esse medico Plat.*

A Genitive case.

Verbs that doe imply Estimation, Accusation, Admonition, Condemnation, Absolution, Plenty and want, doe governe a Genitive case. Estimation as, *Maximi debemus æstimare conscientiam. Cicero. Pluris opes nunc sunt quam prisci temporis annis. Horat. Tu quoq; non medius quam sunt mea tempora, carmen, Interdicta mihi consule Roma boni. Ovid.* Accusation, as *Qui alterum incusat probri, ipsum se tenueri oportet. Plaut. Malè administratæ Provinciæ aliorumq; criminum urgebatur. Tacitus.* Admonition, *Cum nos tanti viri res admonuit. Salust. Cum ipse te veteris amicitiæ commonefaceret. Cicero.* Condemnation, *Parce tuum vatem Sceleris damnare Cupido, Ovid. Etiam Sceleris condemnat generum suum.*

Cicero. Absolution, *Gracchus ejusdem criminis absolvitur. Tacitus. Et miror morbi te purgatum illius, Horat. Senatus nec liberavit Regem ejus culpæ, neq; arguit, Livius.* Plenty. *Implentur veteris Bacchi pinguisq; ferinæ, Virg. Xantippe irarum & molestiarum scatebat. Gellius.* Want, *Quasi tu hujus indigeas patris. Terent. Eget benignæ Tantalus semper dapis, Horat.*

Satago, Miserco, Misereor, Misereseo, Reminiscor, Obliviscor, Memini, Recordor, Potior, Participo, Interest, Refert, Pœnitet, Tædet, Pudet, Piget, &c. Governe a Genitive case, as *Is rerum suarum satagit. Terent. Mea mater tui me miseret. Cicero. Oro misereare laborum Tantorum, miserere animi non digna ferentis. Virg. Arcadii, quæso, misereseite Regis. Virg. Reminiscebantur enim Calendarum Januarii. Cicero. Injuriæ oblivisci debemus, officii meminisse. Seneca. Vivorum memini, nec mortuorum obliviscì possum. Cicero. Hujus meriti in me Recordor, Cicero. Totius Galliæ sese potiri sperant. Cæsar. Paternum servum sui participavit consilii, Plautus. Magni interest ad laudem civitatis, Cicero. Omnia inter se consentiunt membra, quia singula servari totius interest. Seneca. Plurimum refert compositionis, quæ quibus ante ponas. Quinctil. Teq; ferunt iræ pœnituisse tui, Ovid. Sunt homines quos infamiæ suæ non tædeat. Cicero. Si ad centesimum vixisset annum, senectutis eum suæ non pœniteret. Idem. Geminat peccatum quem delicti non pudet. Seneca.*

—— *Pigetq;*

Auctorum sine fine mihi, sine honore laborum. Ovid.

Passives and Neuters implying a passion sometimes governe a Genitive case, as *Ego quidem vehementer animi gaudeo. Cicer. Discrucior animi. Terent.*

Despicbam

Despiebam mentis, Plaut. Successorumq; Minervæ indoluit, Ovid.

Diverse words both Præcedent and Subsequent may governe other cases besides those annexed to them; yet such, as whereof apparent Rules and Reasons are given elsewhere, in the Regiment Plaine or Figurative, in their due place and order.

A Dative case.

Verbs whereby Profit, Disprofit, Comparison, Giving, Restoring, Promising, Paying, Commanding, Telling, Trust, Obedience, Resistence, Event, Threatning, Anger, Taking away, Distance and Reference to any thing, is signified; governe usually a Dative case.

Profit, as *Illa seges demùm votis respondet avari Agricolæ. Virg.*

Disprofit, as *Bonis nocet quisquis pepercerit malis. Publius.*

Comparison, as *Necesse est sibi nimium tribuat, qui se nemini comparat, Quintil.*

Giving and Restoring, as *Is mihi non reddit, quæ dedi ejus Filio mutua Cicero.*

Promising and paying, as *Hæc tibi promitto. Cic. Æs alienum mihi numeravit. Idem.*

Commanding, as *Plura tibi mandare quidem, si quævis, haberem, Ovid. Victis dominabitur Argis. Virg.*

Telling, as *Quid de quoq; viro, & cui dicas sæpe caveto. Horat.*

Trust, as *Vacuis committere venis, Nil nisi lene decet. Horat.*

Obedience, as *Virtus, Fama Decus, Divina, humanaq;*

naq́ pulchris Divitiis parent. Horat Sic mihi semper obtemperavitut filius Patri. Cicero.

Resistance, as *Ignavis precibus Fortuna repugnat, Ovid. Venienti occurrite morbo. Persius.*

Event, as *Hostibus eveniat lenta Puella meis. Ovid. Fama mihi venit. Virg. Non cuivis hominum contingit adire Corinthum. Horat. Mihi accidit si quid accidit. Cic.*

Threatning, as *Multa mihi terræ, multa minantur aquæ, Ovid.*

Anger, as *Nihil est quod succenseat adolescenti. Terent.*

Reference, as *Debemur morti nos nostraq́. Horat. Nil mihi rescribas, attamen ipse veni. Ovid. Illi Pelias, non nobis jacet. Seneca.*

Taking away, as *Inimici mea mihi, non meipsum adimerunt. Cicero. Iamdudum vincula pugnat exuere ipse sibi. Ovid. Quam turbine multa unum me surpite morti. Horat. pro surripite. Excutiet Fortuna tibi. Lucan.*

Distance, as *Cælata virtus paulùm sepultæ distat inertiæ Horat. Infido scurræ distat amicus, Idem.*

Verbs compounded with these Adverbs as, *Satis, Benè, Malè*, doe governe a Dative case, as *Mihi ipse nunquam satisfacio. Cicero. Cui benedixit unquam bono? Idem Neq́ tu verbis unquam solves, quod mihi re malefeceris. Terent.*

Verbs compounded with these Præpositions, *Ad, Ante, Circum, Con, Contra, In, Inter, Ob, Præ, Post, Sub*, governe usually a Dative Case.

Ad, as *Accedit fatis matris miserabilis Infans. Ov.*

Ante, as *Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero. Cicero.*

Circum, *Terna tibi hæc primũ triplici diversa Colore*

Licia

Licia circundo. —— *Virg.*

Extra hos cancellos agendi conabor, quos mihi ipſi circundedi. Cicero.

Con, as *Magna petis Phaeton, ſed quæ non viribus iſtis, Munera conveniunt. Ovid.*

Conveniunt rebus nomina ſæpe ſuis. Idem.

Contra ſeldome, *Ego verò facilè ſum paſſus, ne in mentem mihi aliquid contra veniret, ita iſti faveo ſententiæ. Cicero.*

In, as *Imminet exitio vir Conjugis, illa mariti. Ov.*

Inter, as *Prætor improbus cui nemo interdicere poſſit. Cicero. Interdico tibi aquâ & igni. Plinius.*

Ob, as *Cum nemini obtrudi poteſt, itur ad me. Ter.*

Oppugno an Accuſative ſeldome a Dative.

Præ, as *Difficultatis patrocinia præferimus ſegnitiæ. Quint.*

Poſt, as *Poſtpoſui tamen illorum mea ſeria ludo. Virg.*

Sub, as *Si res tua non ſufficit tibi, tu facut ei ſufficias. Seneca.*

Nec tibi turpe puta precibus Succumbere noſtris. Ovid.

Sum with his compounds, except *Abſum* and *Poſſum,* doe governe a Dative caſe, as *Senibus mors eſt in januis, juvenibus in inſidiis. Seneca. Ille huic negotio non interfuit modò, ſed etiam præfuit. Cicero. Gloria multis obfuit, Ovid. Æquè pauperibus prodeſt, locupletibus æquè. Horat. Multa petentibus deſunt multa. Idem.*

Eſt and *Suppetit,* put for *habeo,* governe a Dative caſe, as *Eſt mihi namq; domi pater, eſt injuſta Noverca. Virg. Velle ſum cuiq; eſt, nec voto vivitur uno. Perſius. Pauper enim non eſt cui rerum ſuppetit uſus. Horat.*

Sum, and other Verbs may governe a double Dative caſe, one of the Perſon and another of the thing,

as

as, *Magno malo eſt hominibus avaritia, Cicero. Hunc ſibi domicilio locum delegerunt. Cæſar. Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis. Terent.*

Verbs Paſſives, beſides the caſe of their Actives, doe governe a Dative caſe of the Agent: as

Cui colar infælix, aut cui placuiſſe laborem? Virg.
At ſimul intonuit, fugiunt, nec noſcitur ulli,
Agminibus comitum qui modo cinctus erat. Ovid.
Mopſe novas incîde faces, tibi ducitur uxor. Virg.
Honeſta bonis viris non occulta petuntur. Cicero.
---- *Nec cernitur ulli, Virg.*
Barbarus hic ego ſum, quia non intelligor ulli. Ovid.
Semper in ſtudiis laboribuſq; viventi, non intelligitur quando obrepat Senectus. Cic.

An Accuſative caſe.

Verbs Tranſitives (that is, which admit the queſtion whom or what after them) of what kind ſoever, whether Active, Deponent, Common, or Neuter active, governe uſually an Accuſative caſe.

Active, as *Hos tu vel fugias, vel ſi ſatis oris habebis,*
Oedipodas facito, Telegonaſq; voces. Ovid.

Deponent. *Creſcentem ſequitur cura pecuniam, Hor.*
Hæc ego vaticinor, quia ſum deceptus ab illo, Ov.
Adoleſcentis eſt, majores natu revereri. Cicero.

Common, as *Qui adipiſci veram gloriam volunt, juſtitiæ fungantur officiis. Cicero.*

Neuter active, as *Tu verò tua damna dole, Ovid.*
At pia nil aliud quam me dolet exule Conjux. Idem.
Nec latuêre doli fratrem Junonis & iræ. Virg.
Ignem ab æde abſtinuit. Livius.
Vbi plauſtro aut aratro juvencũ conſueſcimus. Colu.
Ambit terram aquis Oceanus. Ovid.

Per

Per medios ruit, ac morientem nomine clamat. Virg.
Hyblam quod ſapit, Attiocq́ flores. Mart
Quos ſtudium cunctos evigilavit idem. Ovid.

Verbs Neuters alſo governe an Accuſative caſe of their neere ſignification, as *Qui ſtadium currit eniti & contendere debet quàm maxime poſſit ut vincat. Cicero. Cujus parentes alter ambóve ſervitutem ſervierunt. Livius. Longam incomitata videtur Ire viam. Virg. Inſolentem ludere ludum. Horat. Tertiam etatem hominum vivebat Neſtor. Cicero.*

Verbs of Asking, Teaching, and Cloathing, with this Verb *Colo*, doe governe a double Accuſative caſe; one of the Perſon, and another of the thing.

Of Asking, as *Tu modo poſce Deum veniam. Virg.*

Of teaching, as *Frugalitatem & temperantiam nos docuit Penuria. Terent.*
Illud me clam admones. Cicero.

Of cloathing, as *Induit ſe calceos quos prius exuerat. Terent.*

This verb *Celo*, as *Eane me celet, conſuefeci filium. Terent. Non te celavi ſermonem. Cicero. Qui nos nihil celat. Idem. Nihil celabo tam fidum ſodalem. Eraſmus.*

Verbs Paſſives alſo that imply Intreaty, Inſtruction, Cloathing, will governe the Accuſative caſe of the thing.

Intreaty, as *Sententiam rogamur. Cicero. Poſt acceptam hæreditatem, primus ſententiam rogabatur, cujus hæreditas eſt. Quinct.*

Inſtruction, as *Multis oſtentis multa in extis monemur. Cicero.*

Cloathing, as *Dum mutat cultus induiturq́ togam. Martial. Revocatus veſtem fratris eam ipſam quæ in ſellâ erat induitur. Curtius.*

——— *& inutile ferrum*
Cingitur, ——— *Virg.*

Verbs Paſſives and Neuters that imply a Paſſion or Property, governe an Accuſative caſe.

Paſſives, as *Expleri mentem nequit, ardeſcitq́ tuendo. Virg.*
Pluribus ille notis variatam pingitur alvum. Lucan.
--- Truncatur membra bipenni. Silius.
Eruiturq́ oculos. —— *Ovid.*

Neuters, as *Stare loco neſcit, micat auribus, & tremit artus. Virg.*
--- Sævoq́ genas fulgebitis auro. Statius.
Qui Curios ſimulant & Bacchanalia vivunt. Juv.
Paſtillos Ruſillus olet, Gorgonius hircum.
Nec vox hominem ſonat, ô Dea certè. Virg.

An Ablative caſe in reſpect of the Word governed.

All Verbs doe governe an Ablative caſe, of the Cauſe, Inſtrument and Manner of the cauſe, With the ſigne For, as *Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore, Oderunt peccare mali formidine pœnæ. Horat.*

With the ſigne at, as *Aſpice venturo lætentur ut omnia ſeclo. Virg.*
Invidus alterius rebus macreſcit opimis. Horat.

With the ſigne through, as *Hic murus aheneus eſto, Nil conſcire ſibi, nullâ palleſcere culpâ. Horat.*
Hæc nullam habent vim, niſi irâ excanduit fortitudo. Cicero.
Ope & auxilio Deorum gubernatur Reſpublica. Id.

Of the Inſtrument, as *Naturam expellas furcâ licet uſq́ recurret. Hor.*

Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere Saxis. Virg.

Of the manner, as *Invigilate viri, tacito nam tempora greſſu*

Diffugiunt, vulloq; ſono convertitur annus. Iuven.

Dum vires annique ſinunt, tolerate laborem,

Iam veniet tacito curva ſenecta pede. Ovid.

Verbs doe governe an Ablative caſe of the word of price, as *Qui magni æſtimat libertatem, parvo omnia alia æſtimat. Seneca. Conſtat parvo fames, magno faſtidium. Idem. Magnoq; æterna parantur. Lucan. Multo ſanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria ſtetit. Livi.*

Except theſe Genitive caſes put Subſtantively in the neuter gender; as *Tanti, quanti, tantivis, tantidem, quantilibet, quanticunq;, pluris, minoris,* as *Vix Priamus tanti, totaq; Troja fuit. Ovid.*

Res nulla minoris conſtabit patri, quam filius, Iuvenal.

In reſpect of the word governing.

Verbs that imply Plenty, or Want, Fulneſſe or Emptineſſe, Load, or Deliverance from, Deprivement, or Precedency, governe an ablative caſe.

Plenty, as *Pomis exuberat annus. Virg.*

Pontus ſcatet Belluis. Horat.

In tonſi crines longâ cervice fluebant. Tibullus.

Want, as *Ultima prona via eſt & eget moderamine certo. Ovid.*

Metu vacat amor. Idem. Vela queror reditu, verba carere fide. Idem.

Fulneſſe, as *Improbus ingluviem, raniſq; loquacibus explet. Virg.*

Emptineſſe, as *Hoc te crimine expedi. Terent.*

Load, as *Homines nequiſſimi quibus te onerant mendaciis. Cicero. Obrui & opprimi criminibus & teſtibus*

teſtibus, dolore & ingenia. Idem. Barbaros ſe vino onerare patitur. Iuſtin.

Deliverance from, as *Attamen hanc odiis exonerate fugam. Ovid.*

Ego hoc te faſce levabo. Virg.

Deprivement, as *Spoliantur robore Silvæ. Lucan. Spoliat nos judicio, privat approbatione omni, orbat ſenſibus. Cicero.*

Dum parat hic armis nudare jacentem. Ovid.

Precedency, as *Brevitate & ſuavitate dicendi aliis præſtitit Ariſtoteles. Cicero. Quærit quâ ſe laude quâ virtute Plancus ſuperârit. Idem. Ego meis majoribus virtute præluxi. Idem. Deforme eſt quos dignitate præſtas, ab his virtute ſuperari. Vale. Max. Præſtat tamen ingenio alius alium. Quin. Qui mihi ſtudio penè præcurritis. Cicero. Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt. Cæſar. Sulpitius ætate illis anteit, ſapientiâ omnibus. Cicero.*

Theſe Verbs doe governe an Ablative caſe. *Fungor, Fruor, Utor, Nitor, Veſcor, Potior, Dignor*, uſually, *Superſedeo, Impertio*, not ſo frequently. *Communico, Malo, Participo*, very ſeldome.

Fungor, as *Fungor vice cotis. Horat. Mandatis fungi. Tacitus.*

Fruor, as *Marito meliore fructur. Ovid.*

Utor, as *Verbis moſtibus utor. Ovi. Viribus uti Luc.*

Nitor, as *Virtute decet non ſanguine niti. Claud. Conſilio & Præſidio alicujus niti. Cicero. Fiduciâ virtutis niti. Idem.*

Veſcor, as *Foliis veſcantur amaris. Horat. Munere terræ Veſcimur. Idem. --- Atro ſanguine veſci. Vi. Superatne & veſcitur aurâ Æthereâ. Id.*

Potior, as *Perfacile eſt totius Galliæ imperio potiri. Cæſar.*

Egreſſi

Egressi optata Troes potiuntur arenâ. Virg.

Dignor, as *Haud equidē tali me dignor honore. Virg.*

Qualemcunq; legas, veniâ dignare libellum. Ovid.

Supersedeo, as *Verborum multitudine supersedere. Cicero. Ut supersedeas hoc labore itineris. Idem.*

Impertio as *Plurima salute Parmenonem summum sum impertit Gnatho. Terent*

Aliquem osculo impertire. Sueton.

Communico, as *Cōmunicabo te semper mensa. Plaut.*

Participo, as *Aliquem familiarem sermone suo participavit. Salust.*

Malo having the signe then after it, as *Malim hordeigranum omnibus gemmis. Æsopus.*

Verbs Passives and Neuters implying a Passion or Property, doe governe an Ablative case, as *Angi animo. Cicero Intelligo ipse, & perturbor mente. Sophoclis transtat. Ægrotat animo magis quam corpore. Terent. Excruciat se animo. Pl.*

One and the selfe same Verb may governe diverse cases by diverse rules, as *Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsente, propriâ manu.* And the same case by diverse reasons, *Neroni probis viris crimini vertitur innocentia.* Likewise an Adjective, as *Oxonium est insignior Lovanio literarum studiis, multis parasangis.* Sometimes the Verb in a Periphrase may governe the case of the Verbe, whose signification the Periphrase bears, as *Quos non est veritum in eâ voluptate, quæ maximâ voluptate sensum movet, summum bonum ponere*: that is, *quos non puduit. Cicero. Ut nunc id operam do*, that is, *conor. Terent. Idne ejus autores mihi*, that is, *suadetis. Idem.*

As the Verb doth commonly supply the place of a King, ruleing all; so sometimes the roome of a Subject, being ruled it selfe.

The

The infinitive Moode is governed either of other Verbs or Adjectives. Of other Verbs, as *Dicere quæ puduit, scribere juſsit amor. Ovid. Alterius non ſit qui ſuus eſſe poteſt. Id. Non ſentire mala ſua non eſt hominis, non ferre non eſt viri. Seneca.* Of an Adjective; as *Audax omnia perpeti Gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas. Horat. Humanum errare, Belluinum perſeverare, Senec.*

Nec mihi quærenti ſpatioſam fallere noctem
Laſſaret viduas pendula tela manus. Ovid.
Bis ſex aſſueti vincere ſemper equi. Idem.

The examples whereof Gerunds and the former Supines (their Appendices) doe imitate, for they governe and are governed.

Gerunds and the former Supines doe governe the caſes of their Verb, as *Efferor ſtudio videndi Parentes Cicero. Quis talia fando Temperet à lacrymis? Virg. Ad placandum Deos. Cicero. Ad expugnandum urbem. Idem. Ad occupandum Venuntionem Cæſar. Atq; ita tu tacitus quærenti plura legendum*
Ne quæ non opus eſt fortè loquare, Cave. Ovid.
--- Aut Graiis ſervitum matribus ibo. Virg.
--- Scitatum oracula Phœbi Mittimus. Virg.
Ire dejectum monumenta. Horat.

In that a Genitive caſe is ſometimes put after the Gerund in *Di*, as *Quum illorum videndi gratiâ me in Forum contuliſſem. Plinius. Ad eum in Caſtra venerunt ſui purgandi causâ Cæſar.* It is to be reputed as an elegancy of the Latine tongue.

The Gerund in *Di* commonly is governed of certaine Subſtantives, and ſometimes of Adjectives, as

Et quæ tanta fuit Romam tibi causa videndi. Virg.
Æneas celsâ in puppi jam certus eundi. Virg.

Gerunds

Gerunds in *Do*, are governed of these Præpositions, *A, ab, abs, de, ex, e, cum, in, pro*, which are many times understood, as *Ignavi à discendo citò deterrentur. Cicero. Rectè scribendi ratio cum loquendo conjuncta est. Quint. Ex defendendo quàm ex accusando uberior gloria comparatur. Cicero.*

--- Alitur vitium crescitq; tegendo. Virg.

Gerunds in *Do*, sometimes supply the place of a Dative case, as *Eæ nos lavando & eluendo operam dederunt. Plautus. Mox apta natándo Crura dat. Ov.*

Gerunds in *Dum*, are governed of these Præpositions, *inter, ante, ad, ob, propter.* as *Inter cænandum hilares este. Plaut. Locus ad agendum amplissimus. Cicero.*

The former Supine followeth the signification of his Verb, and depends upon other Verbs or Participles signifying Motion to a place, as

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. Ov.
Fortuna cum blanditur captatum venit. Seneca.
Te id admonitum veniens patrem tuum convent. Plau.

These have an hidden motion, *Coctum ego non vapulatum conductus fui, Non tu me argento, opinor, dedisti nuptum, sed viro. Plaut. Pamphilum cantatum provocemus Terent. Virginem nuptum locavi. Id.*

The latter Supine hath alwaies the passive signification, and is governed of Adjectives, as

Nil dictu fœdum visuve hæc limina tangat. Iuven.
——— Mirabile dictu. Virg.
Horrendum factu. Idem. Pudendum dictu. Quintil.
Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. Cicero.

Of the Rection of a Participle.

Participles governe the Case of their Verbs, as

Lucis egens, nulli ſua forma manebat. Ov.
---Duplices tendens ad ſydera Palmas, talia voce refert. Virg.
Iam iam tacturos ſydera ſumma putes. Ovid.
Quæ nocitura tibi quamvis ſint chara relinque. Cat.
Vnera lacte Domum referunt diſtenta Capellæ. Virg.
Ille ego qui quondam gracili modulatus avenâ Carmen Virg.
Omnes mihi labores leves fuere præterquam tui erendum quod erat. Cicero. Tempori non tuæ culpæ aſcribendum. Textor. Vtendum eſt ætate cito pede præterit ætas. Ovid. Lentitudinis eorum pertæſa Tac.
Ille mihi de te multa rogatus abit. Ovid.
Edoctus belli artes ſub Magiſtro. Livius. Romam portavit puerum docendum artes. Hor. Es mihi illud monendus. Eraſmus. Plura recognoſces, Pauca docendus eris. Ovid.

The Acculative of the thing adheres to the paſſive ſignification. *Acceptus* governes a Dative caſe with the ſigne From, and other Participles of the Prætertenſe, together with the Participles of the Future in *Dus*, governe a Dative Caſe of the *Agent*, with the ſigne *of*, which the Verbs they come of cannot governe, as *Omnia mea mala tibi uni accepta refero. Cic.*
Meam ſalutem tui ipſius benevolentiæ acceptam refero. Idem.
Nulla tuarum audita mihi nec viſa ſororum. Virg.
O mihi poſt nullos Iuli memorande ſodales. Mart.
Reſtat Chremes qui mihi exorandus eſt. Terent.
Idem nobis faciendum eſſe ſentio. Cicero. Domo abeundum eſt mihi. Plaut.

Which two laſt expreſſions and all like unto them, as *Vigilandum eſt ei, orandum eſt nobis, &c.* are made by the Participle in *Dus*, and not by the Gerund

in *Dum*, contrary to the tenent of all Grammarians, therefore had need to be backed with these reasons.

1 Such passages doe note unto us a thing to be done in the Future time, but Gerunds doe alwaies imply a present time, having the English of the Participle of the præsent tense: and therefore the present tense of the Infinitive Moode, of the Active forme, sometimes is used for the Gerund in *Di*, as *Tempus est incidere* for *incidendi Virg.*

2 It must alwaies have a Passive signification, because it still governes a Dative of the *Agent*, set downe or understood, which scarcely is attributed to any Gerund, much lesse to the Gerund in *Dum*, whereof *Vossius* himselfe, a man of greatest reading can hardly finde an instance.

3 If the Future tense of the Infinitive Moode of the Passive forme, be circumlocuted by the Participle of the future in *dus*, as *Amandum esse*; why not as well *amandum est?* but the one is sufficiently proved before, therefore the other must needs follow.

4 These expressions are *paralel* and *equipollent*, to those of the Verball Adjectives in Greeke; both which doe vary, as φιλητέος, έα, έον. *Amandus, da, dum, scribilis, le, lon. Scribendus, da, dum.* But Gerunds doe never vary by changing the termination.

Participles of the Præter tense otherwise have a passive signification, the word, Haveing, being prefixed to them, become Transitives, and governe an Accusative case, as *Depasta florem. Virg. Stratus umbra. Horat. Vallatus frontem radiis. Ovid. Tristior & lacrymis oculos suffusa nitentes. Virg. Tum breviter Dido vultum demissa profatur. Idem. Fultus latus. Idem. Vittis & sacrâ redimitus tempora lauro. Idem.*

Vnâ acie dextrum genu lapide ictus, alterâ crus. Tacitus.

Exosus, Perosus, Pertæsus, have the active signification, and governe an Accusative case, as *Illa velut crimen tædas exosa jugales. Ovid. Templa exosa oculos viriles. Idem. Fœmineum genus perosi. Virg. Exilium longum perosus. Ovid. Et quasi pertæsus ignaviam suam.* Sueton. *Exosus* seldome in the Passive signification governing a Dative of the Doer, as *Ex quibus latentèr intelligas, non omnimodis Dijs exosos esse, qui hac vitâ cum ærumnarum varietate luctantur. Gellius.*

The Rection of an Abverb.

Adverbs of Quantity Time and Place doe governe a Genitive case.

Quantity, as *Sat fautorum semper habet quiescè facit. Seneca. Nec satis ad objurgandum causæ. Terent. Parum splendoris. Horat.*

Time, *Nihil tum temporis amplius quam flere poteram. Terent. Pridie ejus diei venit. Cicero.*

Place, as *Fratrem nunquam invenio gentium.*

Derivative Adverbs governe the case of their Primitives, of what degree of Comparison soever, as *Similiter his Scorpiones terrestres vermiculos suorum specie pariunt. Plinius. Vivere natura si convenienter oportet. Horat. Ne propius urbem Romam milites admoveret. Cicero.* —— *Lycam*
Corripit Alcides, & terâ, quaterâ, rotatum.
Mittit in Euboicas tormento fortius undas. Ovid.
Proximè Hispaniam sant Mauri. Salust. Sed hæc melius vel optimè omnium. Cicero.

These

These Adverbs of likeneſſe, *quaſi, ceu, tanquam, perinde, acſi, haud-ſecus, ut, ſicut*, and ſuch like ſometimes couple like caſes, as *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra ſequitur. Cicero. Epicurus quaſi delicati pueri nihil ceſſatione melius exiſtimat. Idem. Argumento animalium, quæ ſemper defoſſa viuunt, ceu talpæ. Plinius.*

The Rection of a Conjunction.

Which like an Adverb, chiefly conſiſts in the gouernance of Moods, and becauſe of the various uſe of authors in that kind, the knowledge thereof is rather to be gained by the obſerving of them then by uncertaine rules.

Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives with theſe foure, *quàm, niſi, præterquam, an*, for the moſt part couple like Caſes, Moodes, and Tenſes, together, as

Nox & amor, vinumq́; nihil moderabile ſuadent. Ou. Multa tulit, fecitq́; puer, Sudavit, & alſit. Horat. Multum ille & terris jactatus & alto. Virg. Aut bibat aut abeat. Cicero. Aut exuat aut exeat. Plaut. Hoc tibi affirmo nullam in his eſſe laudem ampliorem, quàm eam quam hodiè conſecutus es. Cicer. Nihil mihi nunc Scito tàm deeſſe quàm eum hominem, quicum omnia communicem. Idem. In the former example *quàm* then, in the latter *quàm* as. *Nihil aliud niſi Philomenam volo Terent. Nullius id intereſt præterquam patris, nulli placuit præterquam Cæſari, Neminem præterquam prætorem timeo. Cic. Tacitus metu an contumaciâ. Cicero.* Moods and

Tenſes, as *Vide, utrum vis argentum accipere an cauſam meditari. Terent.*

The Rection of a Præpoſition.

Which is likewiſe very briefe, becauſe it is almoſt fully diſcovered by its diviſion in the Rudiment.

A Præpoſition in Compoſition many times governes the caſe that it doth in appoſition, as *Temerè ne quicquam Parmenonem prætereat. Cicero. Tranſeat Hectoreum Pelias haſta latus. Ovid. Quem ſæpè tranſit caſus, aliquando invenit. Senec. Nec poſſe Italiâ Teucorum avertere Regem. Virg. Nullo fata loco poſſis excludere. Mart. Illum quo læſa eſt horret adire locum. Ovid. Emoti procumbunt cardine poſtes. Virg. Detrudunt naves Scopulo. Idem. Venia vindictâ præſtat (i.) præſtat. Cato. Eſt virtus placidis abſtinuiſſe bonis. Ovid.*

In for *Erga, Contra, ad, propter, ſuper, apud,* uſe *ad*, doth governe an Acculative caſe.

Erga, as *Accipit in Teucros animum mentemq; benignam. Virg.*

Contra, as *Quid meus Æneas in te committere tantum? Idem.*

Ad, as *Natus in miſerium. Cicero.*

Pro, as *Sua illis in legem æterna voluntas Senec.*

Per, as *Creſcit in dies ſingulos hoſtium numerus. Cicero.*

Super, as *Regum timendorum in proprios greges, Reges in ipſos imperium eſt Iovis. Horat.*

Apud, as *Hinc ſpargere voces, in vulgus ambiguas. Virg.*

Usq; ad, as *In lucem semper Acerra bibit. Mart.*

In, with the signe, *to*, requires an Accusative case, as *Quò te Mari pedes aut quò via ducit in urbem? Virg. Versa est in cineres, sospite Troja viro Ovid.* but not alwaies, as *Qua in Cælio monte itur. Varro. Utinamq; oculos in pectore possis inserere. Ovid.*

In, without the signe, *to*, an Ablative case, as *Una tamen spes est quæ me solatur in isto. Ovid. Hoc primum sentio, nisi in bonis amicitiam esse non posse. Cicero.*

But not alwaies, as *Ille ubi miser famelicus videt me esse in tantum honorem. Terent. Mihi in mentem fuit. Plaut. Cum vestros portus in prædonum fuisse potestatem sciatis. Cicero.*

Super, put for *ultra*, *Præter* and *Inter*, governe an Accusative case.

Ultra, as *Super Garamantas & Indos Proferet imperium. Virg.*

Præter, as *Super bellum, annonâ premente. Liv.*

Inte, as *In sermone nato super cœnam. Sueton.*

Super, for *De*, and *Ob*, an Ablative.

De, as *Multus super eâ re varius q; Rumor. Tacit.*

Ob, as *His accensa super. Virg.*

Tenus, governes an Ablative case Singular and Plurall. But a Genitive only Plurall, and that usually of Dualls, as *Umbilico tenus. Liv. Pube tenus. Ter.*

---Lateri capulo tenus abdidit ensem. Virg.

Altera per jugulum pennis tenus acta sagitta est. Ov. Pectoribusq; tenus molles erectus in auras. Idem. Aurium tenus. Quintil. Labrorum tenus. Lucret. Laterum tenus. Virg. Lumborum tenus. Aratus. Genuum tenus. Ovid. Crurum tenus Virg. But sometimes words not Duals, as *Corporum tenus. Plin. Nutricum tenus. Catullus.*

Tenus, seldome governes an Accusative, as *Et Tanain tenus immenso descendit ab Euro. Flac.*

The Rection of an Interjection.

O, governes a Nominative, as *O festus dies hominis! Terent.* an Accusative, as *O præclarum custodem Ovium Lupum! Cic. O fortunatos nimium bona si sua norint Agricolas! Virg. O curas hominum! quantum est in rebus inane? Persius.* A Vocative, as *O formose puer nimium ne crede colori. Virg.*

Heu, and *Proh*, sometimes governe a Nominative, as *Heu pietas, heu prisca fides! Virg. Proh Curia, inversiq; mores! Horat.* Sometimes an Accusative, as *Heu me miserum, qui tuum animum animo spectavi meo. Terent. Proh Deûm atq; hominum fidem! quid vis tibi? Tercat.*

Heu, Seldome a Dative, as *Heu mihi nequeo quin fleam. Plaut.* And *Proh* as seldome a Vocative, as *Quæres proh sancte Iupiter in terris est gesta major! Cicero.*

Heus and *Ohe*, a Vocative as *Heus Syre. Terent. Ohe Libelle. Martial.*

Hem, an Accusative and a Vocative, as *Hem astutias. Terent. Hem Pamphile. Idem.*

Ah, a Vocative, as *Ah Virgo infelix. Virg.*

Vah, an Accusative, as *Vah callidum consilium. Ter.*

Hei, & Væ, & Veh, governe a Dative as *Hei mihi qualis erat. Virg.*
Hei mihi quod Domino non licet ire tuo. Ovid. Veh mihi misero, quantâ de spe decidi. Terent. Carpere Causidicus fertur mea carmina, quis sit
Nescio, si sciero, væ tibi Causidice. Mart.

Ve tibi ridenti, nam mox post gaudia flebis. Eight words and the eight Parts of ſpeech.

Caſes Independent.

Part of time is uſed in the Ablative caſe, as *Alio quidam atq; alio tempore, omnes tamen in eundem locum tendimus. Seneca.*

Hic tamen hâc mecum poteris requieſcere nocte. Virg.

Continuance of time in the Accuſative, as

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. Virg.

Noctes atq; dies patet atri janua Ditis. Idem.

Space of Place is uſed in the Accuſative Caſe, as

Dic quibus in terris (& eris mihi magnus Apollo)

Tres pateat cæli ſpatium non amplius ulnas. Virg.

Cum reliquæ regiones magnum ſpatium abeſſent. Cæſ.

Cum biduum cibo ſe abſtinuiſſet, febris diſcieſſit. Cic.

Sometimes in the Ablative, as *Biduo meipſum longiorem feci. Cicero. Pari ſpatio diſtat utrinq; Ov.*

Quinq; dierum ſpatio ſiniebatur imperium. Liv.

Proper names of Townes and Cities and ſometimes of Ilands, being of the firſt and ſecond Declenſion and ſingular number, the ſigne, *At*, being prefixed, are uſed in the Genitive caſe: but if they be of the third Declenſion, and Plurall number only, in the Ablative, as

Corinthi & lacedæmone, nunciata eſt victoria.

Romæ Tibur amo, ventoſus Tibure Romam, Iuſtin.

Quid Romæ faciam? mentiri neſcio. Iuvenal.

Samia mihi mater fuit, ea habitabat Rhodi. Terent.

Nec filium Regno expuliſſe contenta, bello Cypri exulantem proſequitur. Iuſtin. Duos egregiæ indolis filios ſuos a Gabinianis militibus Ægypti occiſos eſſe

cogno-

cognovit. Val. Max. Aut Cretæ jussit considere Apollo. Virg. Neglectum Anxuri præsidium. Liv. Cùm tu Narbone mensas hospitum conuvomeres. Cicero. Cratippum audientem, idq; Athenis. Cicero.

Domi, Humi, Militiæ, Belli, Terræ, follow the forme of Proper names of the first and second Declension and singular number, as *Domi bellique simul viximus. Terent. Nonne mavis sine periculo domi tuæ, quàm in periculo alienæ. Seneca. Parva sunt foris arma nisi est consilium Domi. Cicero. Humi jacentem scelera non intrant casam. Seneca. Et domi & militiæ consilium suum fidemq; præstabant, Cicero. Quorum virtus fuit domi militiæq; cognita. Idem, Maxima cum vellet terræ procumbere, quæsta est. Ov.*

Rus, is used like proper names of the third Declension, as *Rure paterno est tibi far modicum. Pers.*

Proper names of the same kind are used in the Accusative case after motion to a place, as *Inde Sardiniam venit. Cic. Cyprum relegatur. Idem. Hic venit à te antequam Romam venit. Idem.*

O utinam tunc cum Lacedæmona classe petebat. Ovid.
At nos hinc alii sitientes ibimus Afros,
Pars Scythiam rapidum Cretæ veniemus Oaxen. Virg.

Domus, and *Rus* be likewise used. as *Rus ex urbe tanquam ex vinculis cum evolassent. Cicero. Ite domum saturæ, venit Hesperus ite Capellæ. Virg. Domum reditionis omni spe sublata. Cæsar.* and other common nounes also, as

Tollite me Teucri, quascunq; abducite terras. Virg.
Speluncam Dido Dux & Trojanus eandem Deveniunt. Virg.

Proper names of the same kind are used in the Ablative case after motion from a place and sometimes by a place, as

sed

sed neq; qui Capuâ Romam petit imbre lutoq;
Aspersus volet in cauponâ vivere. Horat.
Marci Antonii reditum Brandusio timeremus. Cicero.
Domus & *Rus* be like wise used, as *Domo huc sum accersitus. Plaut. Domo cedere. Iacm. Domo exulare. Ter. Timeo ne pater rure redierit. Idem.*

A Noune or a Pronoune Substantive joyned with a Participle expressed or understood, and having no word whereof it may be governed, is put in the Ablative case Absolute, as

—— Nil mortale tenemus
Pectoris exceptis ingeniiq; bonis. Ovid.

The Participle understood is alwaies existent, as

Teq; adeo decus hoc ævi, te Consule inibit Pollio. Virg.

Some would have all these and other before mentioned cases to be governed of other words understood by the figure *Elleipsis*, endeavouring thereby to clip our antient plain *Syntaxis*, by making it for the most part Elleiptical: (they straine to crosse it, not strive to crowne it, much to doe to curtaile it, litle to doe to corroborate it; they are so addicted to, and affected with *Scholia's* to set forth a newv, that they produce fevv or no examples to establish the old, which makes me the more copious in examples) But unles they can shevv more sufficient instances, where those words understood are usually expressed, (which as yet is not performed, and for those that be sometime expressed, more and better examples be produced: they must pardon me if I refuse to embrace their opinion, especially finding such grosse slips and mistakes in other Grammaticall passages. I grant a preposition may be usually understood, but not other words so commonly. I think they can hard-

hardly finde these expressions, *In solo terræ*, or *humi*: *In loco domi*, and if a Preposition be added to an Ablative case put absolute, it will prove sometimes nonsence, as —— *Nil mortale tenemus*

Pectoris exceptis ingeniiq; bonis; the Preposition *sub*, or any other being added to *Bonis*, what sense will it be? Neither can they finde any Preposition to *Rus* and *Domus*, either in the Accusative or Ablative case, with the signes *to*, or *from*, prefixed to them. Neither can one example of *Apuleius* perswade me to think that the Ablative case after Nounes of the Comparative degree with the signe *then*, doe depend upon the Preposition *Præ*, besides many moe just exceptions may be taken which I forbeare at this time to mention, fearing to be too tedious to the Reader, or offensive to the learned Grammarians.

Of Figurative Regiment.

Figurative Regiment is that which declines and departs from the native and plaine forme or custome of speaking, as also from the most simple and most common Rules of Art.

The Figures pertaining thereunto are foureteen in number. *Syllepsis*, *Prolepsis*, *Zeugma*, *Synthesis*, *Enallage*, *Elleipsis Pleonasmus*, *Anastrophe*, *Hendiadis Hipallage*, *Hysteron Proteron*, *Syncrysis*, *Heteneisinus*, *Archaismus*.

Syllepsis, is when a Verb or an Adjective added to many *Supposites* doth agree with the more worthy, which is two fold. *Explicite*, when both the supposites are expressed, as *Si tu exercitusq; valetis*. *Cicero.*

Cicero. Pater & mater mortui. Terent. Implicite, when both are understood, as *Impliciti laqveis nudus uterq́ jacet. viz. Mars & Venus. Ovid.*

Prolepsis is when the parts are subjected to the whole, and the Verb doth agree with the whole not with the parts, which likewise is two fold. Explicite when both parts are expressed, as

quoniam convenimus ambo,
Tu calamos inflare leves, ego dicere versus. Virg.
Compulerantq́ greges Corydon & Thyrsis in unum,
Thyrsis oves, Corydon distentas lacte capellas. Idem.

Implicite when one part is understood, as

Alter in alterius jactantes lumina vultus,
Quærebant taciti noster ubi esset amor. Ovid.

Zeugma, is when a Verb or an Adjective agreeing, the neerer is reduced to diverse suppositis, to one expressely, to the other by supplement, as

Tu quid ego & populus mecum desideret, audi. Hor.
--Caper tibi salvus & Hædi. Virg.

Synthesis, is a speech agreeing in sense, but not in word, as

Pars mersi tenuere ratem. —— Virg.
Aperite aliquis ostium. Terent.

Enallage, here is the change of some Accidents against the Rules of usuall Regiment, of Case for Case, as *Non audet hominem id ætatis monere*, for *ejus ætatis. Cicero. It clamor cælo*, for *ad Cælum. V. Heu me pater oppresse*, (for *oppressus*) *jacet. Senec.* Of number for number, as Singular for Plurall, *Hostis habet muros*, for *hostes habent. Virg.* Plural for *singular*, as *Cur ego in his te conspicor Regionibus*, for *in hâc Regione. Terentius.* Gender for Gender, as *Dulce satis humor, depulsis arbutus hædis.*
Lenta salix fæto pecori, mihi solus Amyntas. Virg.

Person

Perſon for perſon, as *Si quis me quærit Rufus, præſto eſt*, for *præſto ſum. Quando eum quæſtum occeperis, accipiunda & muſitanda injuria adoleſcentium eſt*, for *quando quis occeperit*, the ſecond perſon put for any. The Poſitive for the Comparative degree, as *Paulò qui eſt homo tolerabilis*, for *tolerabilior. Terent.* Moode for Moode, and Tenſe for Tenſe, as *Valebis igitur, neq; ut à puero feciſti: amabis valebis*, for *Vale, Ama. Cicero.*

Elleipſis, is the defect of a word in ſenſe neceſſary to lawfull ſtructure, as *cùm in animo haberet navigandi. Scil. Voluntatem. Cicero. Quamvis ei ſecundas ferè Grammaticorum conſenſus deferat. Scil. partes. Quint. Tantamne rem tam negligenter agere? Scil. Oportebat. Terent.* Where a conjunction is wanting, it is called *Aſyndeton*, as *Dum ætas, metus magiſter prohibebant*, where *et* is wanting. *Terent.*

Pleonaſmus is when one or moe words doe abound in any ſpeech, as.

—— *Sic ore locuta eſt, Virg.*

Hiſce oculis egomet vidi. Terent. By this figure, *Sibi, Mihi, Tibi*, are ſometimes Redundant, uſed for pleaſantneſſe, not for neceſſities ſake, as *Iugulat hominem, ſuo ſibi gladio. Terent. Qui mihi, ubi ad uxores ventum eſt, tum ſiunt Senes. Idem. Fac tibi paternæ legis tuæ in mentem veniat. Cicero.* The Redundancy of a conjunction is called *Polyſyndeton*, as *Ego pol quóq; etiam timida Sum. Terent.*

Anaſtrophe is the prepoſterous order of words, as *Nam vitiis nemo ſine naſcitur. Horat.*

Hendiadis, is when one is expreſſed by two, as *Pateris libamus & auro*, for *aureis Pateris. Virg.*

Hypalage, is an inverted order of Regiment, as *Ibant obſcuri ſolâ ſub nocte per umbras*, for *Soli ſub ob-*

obſcurâ nocte. Virg. In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas. Corpora, for *in novas formas mutata corpora. Ovid.*

Hyſteron Proteron, is when that which ought to be put in the ſecond place is put in the former, as *Moriamur & in media arma ruamus,* for *in media arma ruamus & moriamur. Virg.*

Syncryſis is when words that belong to diverſe parts of a ſentence, are ſo mingled, that the whole ſpeech thereupon becomes obſcure and confuſed, as *Namq; pilâ lippis inimicum & ludere crudis,* for *Ludere pilâ eſt inimicum lippis & Crudis.*

An *Helleniſme,* is when a word is not joyned to that caſe which the Latine, but which the Greeke propriety requires, as *Deſine moſtium tandem querelarum. Hor.*

An *Archaïſme* here is the manner of Regiment in uſe with the Ancient, which now is obſolete, as *Quid tibi hanc rem curatio eſt? Plautus.* With the Ancients Verballs in, *tio,* did governe the caſe of their Verbs.

A Direction for expoſition.

WHen you are to expound a piece of Latine. You muſt firſt read the ſentence plainly and diſtinctly to a full point. Secondly, you muſt marke all the points as Commaes, Colons, Interogations, &c, and all proper names, which are written in great letters, and the Parentheſes, which are alwaies conſtrued by themſelves. Thirdly you muſt firſt begin with the Vocative caſe if there be any, or whatſoever is in ſteed of it, or depends on it. Fourthly you muſt ſeek out the principall verb, and his Nominative caſe; and take firſt the Nominative, and that which hangeth on it, as an Adjective, then the Verb with the Adverb and Infinitive moode which depends on it, next the Accuſative caſe, or ſuch as the Verb properly governeth, Laſtly the other caſes in order: *viz.* Firſt the Genitive caſe, then the Dative, afterward the Ablative. The Subſtantive and Adjective muſt be expounded togither, except the Adjective doe governe ſome other word, or have ſome other word joyned to it into which it paſſeth his ſignification, and the prepoſition muſt be joyned with his caſe. Yet this order is often altered by Interrogatives, Relatives, Partitives, certaine Adverbs, and Conjunctions. Therefore marke whether the ſentence be interrogative, or begin with an Adverbe, or Conjunction, as *Ubi eſt frater tuus? Quo die litteras accepiſti? Quot putas eſſe in hac urbe pauperes? Atqui ſic præceptor docuit. Non ignoro.*

An

An example for parsing and expounding a Lecture according to the precedent Positions.

Quanquam] a Conjunction, Adversative, compound of *quam* and *quam*.

Oportet] A verbe impersonall, neuter, compound of *opus*, and *porto*, without a Nominative case.

Te] a Pronoune Substantive, primitive, demonstrative, the Accusative case, and followeth the uerb *oportet*.

Marce fili] *Marce* a noune Substantive, proper, primitive, the vocative case put by apposition to *tu* understood.

Fili] a noune Substantive common, primitive, the vocative case put by apposition to *Marce*.

Iam] an Adverbe of time, a Primitive.

Audientem] a participle of the present tense of *audiens*, of *audiebam* of *audio*, the Accusative case, the Masculine gender and singular number agreeing with his Substantive, *te*.

Cratippum] a noune substantive proper, compound of κράτος super & ἵππος *equus* the accusative governed of the Participle *audientem*.

Annum] a noune substantive, common, primitive the accusative case signifying durance of time.

Idq; Athenis] *que* a Conjunction copulative, primitive, enclitick.

Id, a pronoune adjective, primitive, relative, the accusative case, singular number, and neuter gender put substantively, and governed of the participle *facientem* under stood.

Athenis, a noune ſubſtantive Proper, Primitive, Heteroclite, the Ablative caſe, becauſe it is a proper name of a place of the plurall number only.

Abundare] a Verb Perſonall neuter, compounded of *ab* and *undo*, the infinitive moode, and preſent tenſe depending on the verb *oportet*.

Præceptis] a noune Subſtantive common derivative verball of *præceptum* of *præceptu* of *præcepi*, of *præcipio*, of *præ* and *capio*, the Ablative caſe governed of *abundare*.

Que] as above.

Inſtitutis] a noune Subſtantive common, derivative, verball, of *inſtitutum*, of *inſtitutu*, of *inſtitui*, of *inſtituo*, of *in* and *ſtatuo*, the Ablative caſe, *que*, coupling like caſes betweene *inſtitutis* and *præceptis*.

Philoſophiæ] a noune ſubſtantive common, derivative, ſubſtantivall, of *Philoſophos* of φιλὸς and σοφὸς the genitive caſe the latter of two ſubſtantives *inſtitutis* the former.

Propter ſummam authoritatem] *propter* a præpoſition ſerving to the Accuſative caſe, derivative of *Pro*.

Summam, a noune adjective of the ſuperlative degree of *Supra*, the Accuſative caſe, feminine gender, and ſingular number agreing with his ſubſtantive *authoritatem*.

Authoritatem, a noune Subſtantive common, Derivative, Subſtantivall, of *authoritas*, of *authori* of *author*, the accuſative caſe ſingular number, governed of the præpoſition *propter*.

Et] a conjunction copulative, Primitive.

Doctoris] a noune Subſtantive common, derivative, verball, of *doctor*, of *doctu*, of *docui*, of *doceo*, the genitive caſe ſingular number, latter of two Subſtan-

ſtantives *authoritatem* the former.

Et] as above.

Vrbis] a noune Subſtantive common, primitive, the Genitive caſe, Singular number, *Et*, coupling like caſes, between *vrbis* and *doctoris*.

Quorum] a pronoune adjective, common, primitive, Relative, the genitive caſe, maſculine gender, and plurall number, agreeing with his Antecedent Subſtantives, *doctoris* and *vrbis*.

Alter] a noune Adjective common, primitive, irregular the nominative caſe, maſculine gender and ſingular number, agreeing with his Subſtantive *doctor*.

Poteſt] a verb perſonall neuter, irregular, compounded of *pos* and *ſum*, the preſent tenſe, ſingular number and third perſon, agreeing with his nominative caſe *doctor*.

Augere] a verb perſonall active, ſimple, Infinitive moode preſent tenſe, depending on the verbe *poteſt*.

Te] as above, following the verb *augere*.

Scientia] a noune ſubſtantive common, derivative, participiall, of *ſcientia*, the nominative caſe, of *ſcienti*, of *ſciens*, of *ſciebam*, of *ſcio*, the Ablative caſe, ſingular number, governed of the verb *augere*.

Altera] the ſame that *alter*, the nominative, feminine gender and ſingular number, agreeing with his ſubſtantive *urbs* underſtood.

Exemplis] a noune ſubſtantive common, decompound of *ex* and *amplus*, of *am*, and *plus*, the Ablative caſe, and plurall number, governed of *augere*, a verb of plenty.

Tamen] a Conjunction redditive primitive.

Vt] An adverb of likeneſſe Primitive.

Ipſe] A pronoune Adjective, primitive, demonſtrative, nominative caſe, maſculine gender, and ſingular number, agreeing with his ſubſtantive *Ego*.

Semper] an Adverb of time, Primitive.

Conjunxi] a Verb perſonall active, compound of *con* and *jungo*, the Indicative moode, præterperfect tenſe, ſingular number, and firſt perſon, agreeing with his nominative caſe *Ego*.

Latina] a Noune Adjective proper derivative, poſſeſſive, of *Latinus*, of *Latium*, the Accuſative caſe, plurall number, and neuter gender, put ſubſtantively, and following the verbe *conjunxi*.

Cum græcis] *cum* a præpoſition ſerving to the Ablative caſe, primitive.

Græcis, a noune Adjective proper, derivative, poſſeſſive of *græcia*, the Ablative caſe plurall number, and neuter gender, put ſubſtantively, and governed of the præpoſition *cum*.

Ad] a præpoſition ſerving to the accuſative caſe, primitive.

Meam] a pronoune Adjective, derivative, poſſeſſive of *mei*, the genitive caſe of *ego*, the accuſative caſe, feminine gender, and ſingular number agreeing with his Subſtantive *utilitatem*.

Utilitatem] a noune ſubſtantive common, derivative, adjectivall, of *utilitas*, of *utilis*, of *utor*, the accuſative caſe governed of the præpoſition *ad*.

Neq;] a conjunction copulative, compound of *ne*, and *que*.

Solum] an adverb of parting. Derivative of *ſolus*.

Feci] a verbe perſonall neuter-active, ſimple, the Indicative moode præterperfect tenſe ſingular number and firſt perſon, agreeing with his nominative caſe *ego*, underſtood.

Id] as before, the Accusative case, and followeth the verb *feci*.

In] a præposition serving to the ablative case, primitive.

Philosophia] as before, the Ablative case, governed of the præposition *in*.

Sed] a Conjunction discretive: Primitive.

Etiam] a Conjunction copulative: derivative of *Et*.

In] as before.

Dicendi exercitatione] *Exercitatione*, a noune Substantive common, derivative, verball, of *exercitatio*, of *exercitatu*, of *exercitavi*, of *exercito*, of *exercitu*, of *exercui*, of *exerceo*, of *ex* and *arceo*, of *ex*, the Ablative case, singular number, governed of the præposition *in*.

Dicendi] a gerund in *di*, depending upon the substantive *exercitatione*.

Idem tibi sentio faciendum] *Sentio* a verbe personall, active, simple, Indicative moode, present tense, singular number and first person, agreeing with his nominative case, *Ego*.

Idem] a pronoune adjective, relative, compounded of *is*, and *dem*, the Accusative case, singular number, and neuter gender, put substantively, and cometh before the Infinitive moode *esse* (understood) *that* being the signe.

Faciendum] a future in *dus*, of *facientis*, of *faciens*, of *faciebam*; of *facio*, the accusative case, singular number, and neuter gender, agreeing with, *idem*.

Tibi] a pronoune primitive, demonstrative, the dative case of the dooer governed of *faciendum*.

Vt par sis] Ut a Conjunctioncausall Primitive.

Par] a noune adjective common, primitive, the

nominative case, masculine gender, and singular number agreeing with his substantive *tu*.

Sis] a Verbe personall, neuter, irregular, primitive, the Subjunctive moode, singular number, and second person, agreeing with his nominative case *tu*.

In facultate] *In* as before.

Facultate, a noune Substantive, common, derivative verball, of *facultas*, of *facio*, the Ablative case, singular number, governed of *in*.

Vtriusq; orationis] *utriusq;* a noune adjective common, compound of *uter* and *que*, irregular, the genitive case singular number, and feminine gender, agreeing with his substantive, *orationis*.

Orationis, a noune substantive common, derivative, verball, of *oratio*, of *oratu*, of *oravi*, of *oro*, of *os oris*, the genitive case; latter of two substantives *facultate* the former.

Directions

Direction for the tranſlating of Engliſh into Latine.

HE that will goe about to turne Engliſh into Latine, muſt firſt be enabled to examine, judge, and determine of every word, as well litle as great, whether it be a bare ſigne (for which no Latine word is allotted) or any of the eight parts of ſpeech; and if it be, whether it be a Noune or a Verb. For in theſe two (as of the Latine, ſo) the ſubſtance of every language conſiſteth principally; and theſe are more difficult to be attained then the reſt, becauſe the other parts of ſpeech being for the moſt part finite and numerable, are more eaſy to be Learned and obſerved, but theſe two being infinite and innumerable, are harder to be knowne and remembred. For thy more facility in diſcerning of all, both ſmall and great, ſigne and ſubſtance, make uſe of theſe few ſhort notes.

1 A Noune is the compellation of a thing Subſtantiall or Accidentall, without any difference of Perſon, (whereby it is diſtinguiſhed from a Pronoune) or time, (whereby it is differenced from a Verb.)

A Noune is two fold { Subſtantive. / Adjective.

Both which are infallibly diſcerned, by placing the word *Thing*, immediatly after it in thy minde: for if it be an Adjective, it will aptly ſtand after it in ſence.

But if a Subſtantive it will be ſenſeleſſe.

A Noune Adjective hath two *degrees of Compariſon*: the ſignes of the former being the Comparative, are *More*, or *Er*, in the end of the Engliſh of the Poſitive word, as *more hard*, *harder*. And the latter being the Superlative, are *moſt*, or *eſt* in the end of the Engliſh of the Poſitive word, as *moſt* hard or *hardeſt*, and ſo the word (*very*) unleſſe it be preſixed to a Subſtantive, and then it is the Engliſh of, *Ipſe*.

A Pronoune is a part of ſpeech, finite, the number whereof amounts to 64. and therefore they with their ſeverall ſignifications may eaſily be committed to memory.

A verb is knowne by his three fold ſignification, to *doe*, to *ſuffer*, and to *be*.

Participles like unto verbs, are Infinite, but they are reduced unto foure heads: two whereof, are known by their terminations in Engliſh and Latine, as a Participle of the preſent tenſe hath his Engliſh ending in *ing*: and his Latine in, *ans* or *ens*. A participle of the Præter tenſe hath his Engliſh ending in, *d*, *t*, or *n*, and ſometimes in *ing*, being the Participle of a Deponent, and his Latine, in *tus*, *ſus*, *xus*. The other are known by their Latine terminations and ſignifications, as the firſt future ends in *rus*, and hath the Active or Active-like ſignifications: the ſecond in *dus*, and hath alwaies the paſſive.

An Adverbe is partly finite and partly infinite. So farre forth as it is infinite, it comes uſually of a Noune, and is known commonly by the Engliſh ending in *ly*, a few Adjectives being excepted, as *godly*, *holy*, *daily*, *unruly*, and is an Adverb of quality. So farre forth as it is finite and uſuall (the number

ber being about (138) it may eaſily be learned.

A Conjunction is finite, the number whereof amounts to ſome, 71.

A Præpoſition is finite, the number whereof is about, 57.

Interjections that are uſuall are finite, the number of them being about 21. and therefore theſe three parts of ſpeech may eaſily be learned.

2 When an Engliſh is to be made in Latine, firſt looke out the Principall verb: for the verb is as it were a King that ruleth all, the Caſes are as it were the Subjects attending upon it. The nominative cometh before, and is ſometimes ſet after; the Accuſative commonly followeth the Verb, the other caſes are governed. If there be moe Verbs then one in a ſentence, that is the principall Verb, which is neither the Infinitive Moode, nor hath before it a Relative, as, *that, who, whom, which*; nor any Adverbs of time, as *when, after that, untill, as long as, ſo ſoone as, whileſt that*: nor any Conjunction copulative or disjunctive, not being the firſt word of a ſentence; nor any of theſe Conjunctions cauſalls, as *becauſe, ſeeing that, ſo that, for as much as*; nor this Adverſative *although*; nor any of theſe conditionalls, *if, but if, ſo that*; Nor any of the Exceptives *unleſſe, but that*.

3 When ye have found the Verb, aske the queſtion *who or what?* and the word that anſwereth to the queſtion, ſhall be the Nominative to the Verb. And after the ſame manner, ye ſhall finde out the Subſtantive to the Adjective, whether it be Noune, Pronoune or Participle.

The property of the Nominative Caſe is to come before the Verb perſonall: for a Verb impersonall will

will admit of no Nominative.

The Nominative case may come after the Verb in these foure expressions. 1 When a Verb is of the Imperative Moode and second person, as *Read thou, Read yee.* 2 When a question is asked, as, *Readest thou?* 3 When the signes, *it*, or *there*, are used, as *it is my booke, there came one to mee.* 4 When we meet with a Verb substantive, or with any Verb of the like sort, which will have a Nominative case on both sides, as *Correction is Instruction.*

The Genitive case is commonly known by this token, *of*: and answereth to this question, *whose or whereof.*

Of, immediatly after a Substantive, and sometimes an Adjective, and in the same clause, cannot be placed after the Verb, or any other word with the safety of the sense is commonly the signe of the Genitive case.

Of, is not alwaies, nor only the signe of the Genitive case. 1 Not alwaies,

1 Because after Adjectives signifying *likeuesse* and *measure*; after Verbs signifying *Esteeming* and *Want*; after the English of *Misereo, Misereor, Miseresco*, to pitty, *reminiscor, memini*, and *recordor* to remember, *obliviscor* to forget, and *Potior* to obtaine some times it looseth his signe.

2 Because it being put by apposition, and after Adjectives in the *Neuter gender* put *Substantively*, and after Adverbs of *Place, Time*, and *Quantity*, alwaies looseth its signe.

3 *Of*, after the english of, *Cæter, Reliquus* the rest, and *medius* the middle, is a part of their signification, and not a signe of a case, and so sometimes after Gerunds.

4 *Of*, after a passive signification, is sometimes a signe of the Dative of the *doer*, and sometimes of a Gerund in *Di*, and Adjectives Possessives.

5 Because after Verbs signifying *Asking* and *admonishing*, and after the English of the Verb *Consulo* to aske counsell of, *Queror* to complaine of, *Despero* to despaire of, and *Admitto* to admit of: also after Verbs of fearing it is part of their signification, governing an Accusative case, and noe signe.

6 *Of*, after the praise and dispraise of a thing sometimes is the signe of the Ablative case. After *Opus* and *Usus* signifying neede, is alwaies the signe of the Ablative case.

7 After Adjectives signifying *plenty* & *want*, and the English of the Adjectives *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *of*, is sometimes the signe of the Ablative case.

8 After Verbs signifying *unfolding*, and *want*, *of*, oftentimes is the signe of the Ablative case, it is also the signification of the præpositions, *a*, or *ab*, with the Ablative case of the Agent; and *e*, or *ex*, with the Ablative case of the *matter*; and *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the Ablative case of any other Verb, or partitive, and *de*, after these Substantives, *Mentio* mention, *locutio*, *loquela*, speaking; *Colloquium*, taking; and *querela*, complaint; and before the Subject of a Booke, as *Ovid* of the art of loving, *Tullius* of Duties, and *de*, *e*, *ex*, before the place or pedigree of a man.

2 Not only, 1 Because (*at*) before the proper name of a place of the first or second Declension, and singular number, is alwaies a signe of the Genitive case.

2 After Adjectives signifying *likenesse*, *unlikenesse*, *community* or *propriety*, and after this word (*belongeth*) the English of *Refert* and *Interest*, and

(like)

(like) the Engliſh of *inſtar: (to)* ſometimes is a ſigne of the Genitive caſe.

3 After Verbs governing a Genitive caſe by *Synechdoche (in)* is a ſigne thereof, and ſometimes after Adjectives ſignifying skill.

The Dative is knowne by this token (*to*) and anſwers to the queſtion *to whom*, or *to what? To*, is not alwaies nor only the ſigne of the Dative caſe.

1 Not alwaies. 1 Becauſe ſometimes it is the ſigne of the Genitive caſe, as aforeſaid. It is alſo the ſigne of the Infinitive moode, and Supines: ſometimes alſo the ſignification of the præpoſition, *Ad*, before Gerunds in, *Dum*, and their Gerundivall voices; and before the Accuſative caſe after Adjectives ſignifying Profit and diſprofit, and after this word *(belongeth)* the Engliſh of theſe words, *Attinet, Pertinet, Spectat*, and ſometimes a Verbe of compareing, and ſometimes when addition is implyed, and after Verbs and Participles ſignifying motion, moving to a place. Moſt commonly (I ſay) for ſometimes the Poets have a Dative caſe after ſuch Verbs.

2 Becauſe after Verbs ſignifying *Profit* or *Diſprofit, Promiſing, Paying, Commanding, Truſting, Obeying, Reſiſting*, and many compounds, the ſigne (*to*) is either omitted, or the ſignification of the Præpoſition, *ad*, is ſet before the Dative caſe.

2. Not only, 1, Becauſe, *of*, is the ſigne of the Dative caſe after a Paſſive ſignification.

2 *For*, after many Verbs is the ſigne of the Dative Caſe.

3 *From*, after Verbs ſignifying receiving, taking away, diſtance.

4 *With*, after Verbs ſignifying *mixture, anger*, and

and after the Greekes *contention*.

The Property of the Accusative case is to follow the Verb, and answereth to this question *whom* or *what*: so that every word answering to this question, *whom* or *what*? is the Accusative case; unlesse the Verb doe properly governe another case.

The Accusative case sometimes cometh before the Verb. 1. When it hath the signe (*that*) immediatly going before it. 2. When it is the Accusative case of the Relative, Interrogative, or Indefinite, because of what case soever they be, the Relative and Interrogative alwaies, and the Indefinite for the most part, are placed and expounded before the Verb, and then we say they are rather governed of the Verb, then follow it by the same rule. When the Relative and Interrogative come before the Infinitive Moode, they are expressed without the signe (*that*) which is plainly discovered by turning them into the Pronoune Article of the same case.

The Vocative case is knowne by the signe, *O*.

There be 10, signes of the Ablative case, *from*, *in*, *of*, *on*, *by*, *with*, *at*, *through*, *for*, and *then*, after the Comparative degree: of which the sixe latter, sometimes are directly, and by nature, signes of the Ablative case; but the foure former are not so, but indirectly and by consequence, so farre forth as the English of the præpositions serving to an Ablative case.

From, is not alwaies the signification of, *a*, *abs*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, and so the signe of the Ablative case, but sometimes the signe of the Genitive after the English of *Devius*, as (*æqui Devius* swerving from right) of the Dative (as afore said) of the Accusative, after Verbs of *concealing*, as *nihil cælabo tam fidum sodalem*, I will conceale nothing from so faithfull a companion.

In

In is not alwaies the signification of the Præposition *in* the Latine word, and so the signe of the Ablative case: but sometimes it is the signe of the Genitive, and the Accusative by Synechdoche, as *Deliras animi*, thou doatest in minde: *candet dentes* he is white in his teeth.

Of, is not alwaies the signification of the Præpositions, *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex*, after the English of *Pendeo* to depend, *Gigno* to get, *Fio* to be made, &c. and so a signe of the Ablative case, but sometimes, as afore said of the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative without a Præposition.

On, is the signification of the Præpositions, *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex*, after the English of *pendeo, gigno* to beget, and Verbs of that kind, and thereby is made a signe of the Ablative case.

By, is sometimes a signe of the Ablative case, of the *manner* and *instrument*; it is also the signification of the Præpositions, *Per* and *Ex*, *a* or *ab:* with the Ablative case of the *doer*.

With, is sometimes a signe of the Ablative case, of the *manner* of *instrument*. It is the signification of the Præpositions *Apud* and *Cum*: Also when it noteth *Society*. Sometimes the signe of the Dative, as aforesaid, and the Accusative after the English of the Verb *Consulo* to consult.

The Ablative Cases of the *manner* and *instrument*, are distinguished this way.

The Ablative case of the *instrument*, noteth (for the most part) a thing *corporeall, visible*, and *materiall*; the Ablative case of the manner (for the most part) noteth a thing *incorporeall, invisible* and *immateriall*.

At, is the signe of the Ablative case of the *cause*, some-

times the signification of the Prepositions *Ad* and *Apud*. It is also the signe of the Genitive (as afore said) and parcell of the significations of these Verbs, *Admiror* I wonder at, *Latro* I barke at, *Rideo* I laugh at, governing an Accusative case.

Through, is the signe of the Ablative case; of the cause, sometimes the signification of the Preposition *Per*.

For, is the signe of the Ablative case, of the cause: and the signification of the Prepositions, *In*, *Ad*, *Pro*, *Propter*: and of the Dative case (as afore said) in the begining of a Sentence, it is the English of a Conjunction causall: it is also parcell of the signification of these Verbs, *Expecto* I looke for; *Spero* I hope for, *Operior* I stay for, *Accerso*, *Arcesso* I send for: *Curo* I care for: *Investigo* I seeke for, &c. governing an Accusative case.

Then, is a signe of an Ablative case only after a comparative degree, after which if there be none, it is the English of the Adverb of time *Tum*, or the conjunction *Quàm*.

§ As the Cases and their signes, so the significations of the Verbs, and the signes thereof, the signes of the Moodes and Tenses are exactly to be known.

The signification of every Verb, whether it be Personall or Impersonall, compleat or defective, Regular or Irregular, Simple or Compound, Primitive or Derivative, Active, Passive, Neuter, Deponent, Neuter-active, or Neuter-passive, may be reduced to these three Active, Passive and Neutrall.

Doe, *dost*, or *Est*, *doth* or *eth*, *did* or *didst*, immediatly comming before the English of a Verb, are commonly signes of a true Active signification, but the infallible signe is that it cannot be turned into the Passive.

Am

Am, art, is, are, was, were, bin, bee, immediatly coming before the Englisſh of a Verb, are commonly the ſignes of a true Paſſive ſignification: But there be three infallible ſignes thereof. Two immediatly after the Engliſh of a Verb, as principally and frequently, *of* and *by* ſometimes having the caſe of the Agent annexed to them, otherwiſe the latter may ſometime be the ſigne of the inſtrument, as in this ſaying (*of God we are ſuſtained by foode*) and the former ſometimes the ſigne of the caſe, that the Verb properly governes, as *thou ſhalt be deprived of thin burden.* The third is that it may be turned into the Active; for Active and Paſſive are Relatives by nature, the one cannot ſubſiſt or have any denomination without the other, and they are reciprocally convertible.

The Neutrall is two fold, either Active-like, as *Curro* I run, or Paſſive like, as *Ægroto* I am ſick; when it is Active-like, it hath the ſignes of the active, when Paſſive-like, the ſignes of the Paſſive; but the infallible ſigne is, that it can never be turned into a true paſſive forme.

The ſignes of the Moodes are theſe.

The ſigne of the Indicative Moode is, that it hath no ſigne, it only ſhewes and barely affirmes. The ſigne of the Imperative mood is *bidding* and *commanding*, and ſometimes *let*.

The ſigne of the Optative Moode is an Adverb of *wiſhing*.

The ſignes of the Potentiall Moode are, *May, can, might, could, would, ſhould, or ought*.

The ſigne of the Subjunctive Moode, is a *Conjunction*, and ſometime an *Adverb*.

When

When a Verb commeth immediatly after the English of theſe words, being not Interrogatives or Relatives, as *qui quæ quod, quis quid*, who or what, *quantus*, how great, (if *tantus*, ſo great, goe not before) *qualis*, what an one (if *talis* ſuch an one, goe not before) *quemadmodum, quàm* how, *Cur, quamobrem*, why, wherfore; *Uter, num, nunquis*, and *ne* at the end of a word, whether, *quorſum*, to what end, *ubi* where, *quò* whether, *unde* from whence, it muſt be put in the Subjunctive Moode allwaies, ſubjoyned to another Verb going before, ſet downe or underſtood, conſider who thou art, *Qui ſis conſidera*; ſee what ſweetneſſe is in thee, *Vide quanta ſit in te ſuavitas.*

The infinitive moode is knowne commonly by the ſigne, *to.*

The ſignes of the Tenſes in both Active and Paſſive voice, are ſuch as you may finde in its due place in the Grammer, where the Tenſes are deſcribed.

6 Many Nominatives ſingular having a conjunction copulative coming between them, and ſometimes one Nominative, and the Ablative with the Præpoſition *Cum*, figuratively will have a Verb Plurall, which Verb plurall ſhall agree with the Nominative of the moſt worthy Perſon. Where note, that the firſt perſon is more worthy then the ſecond, the ſecond more worthy then the third.

And that the Nominative of the firſt or ſecond Perſon is very ſeldome expreſſed unleſſe for diſtinction ſake, as *Ego peccavi* I have ſinned, *Ego ſceleratè egi* I have done wickedly, *ſed iſtæ oves quid fecerunt?* but theſe ſheepe, what have they done. *Vos damnaſtis*, yee have condemned: or for vehemency ſake, as *tu dominus*, thou ſhalt be my Lord; *Tu vir*,

thou shalt be my husband; *tu mihi frater eris*, thou shalt be my brother: and that the nominative case of the third person in Verbs, whose significations belong only to men, is often understood, as *Est* he is, *Fertur* it is reported, *Dicunt*, *Aiunt*, *Ferunt*, they say, *Prædicant*, *Clamitant*, they noise, &c.

7 When a Verb cometh between two Nominatives of diverse numbers, the Verb may indifferently but figuratively accord with either of them, so that they be both one person, as the falling out of lovers is the renewing of love.

8 Many Substantives singular having a conjunction copulative coming between them, figuratively will have an Adjective relative plurall; which Adjective plurall shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy gender, as *Rex & Regina beati*; *Calybs & Aurum fuut in fornace probati*, *Leges & plebiscita sunt violatæ*. Where note that the Masculine gender is more worthy then the Feminine, and the Feminine more worthy then the Neuter, unlesse in things not apt to have life, wherein the Neuter is most worthy; in so much that the Adjective is put in the Neuter gender, although the Substantive be Masculine or Feminine, and none of them the Neuter: When a sentence or a clause goeth before, the Adjective shall be put in the Neuter gender; and if two or more, then it shall be put in the plurall number.

Adjectives which have a double termination in the Ablative case, are not promiscuously to be used, but commonly the former, *e*, is to be joyned with the Masculine or Feminine, and the latter, *i*, with the Neuter.

9 When there cometh no nominative case between the Relative and the Verb, the Antecedent substan-

tive

ive which the Relative rehearseth, or the Relative it self put Substantively in the Neuter Gender, shall be the nominative case to the Verb: but if otherwise it shall be governed of the Verb, or of another word in the same sentence, which rules the Interrogatives and Indefinites doe follow.

10 When a Relative cometh between two Substantives of diverse genders, it may indifferently accord with either of them, as *homines tuentur illum globum, quæ vel qui, terra dicitur.*

11 When the English of the word, *res*, is put with an Adjective, whether Noune, Pronoune, or Participle, you may put away, *res*, and put the Adjective in the Neuter gender, like a Substantive, and being so put, it may be the Substantive to the Adjective; and some time, when it hath not the English of the word, *res*, it is put Substantively in the neuter gender, as *Multum lucri, Id operis, Quantum negotii, Abeundum est mihi.*

12 When a question is asked the answer in Latine must be made by the same case of a Noune Pronoune or Participle; and by the same tense of the Verb, that the question is asked by, as *Cujus est hæc mensa? Vicini. Quid agitur in ludo literario? Studetur.* Except the question be asked by *cujus cuja cujum*, and the answer made by another word, that is not a possessive, as *Cuja est sententia? Ciceronis*; or by a word that may governe diverse cases, as *Quanti emisti librum? parvo.* Or except the answer be made by one of these, or any other possessive, *meus, tuus, suus, noster, Vester*, as *cujus est domus? non vestra sed nostra.*

13 A Noune or a Pronoune Substantive, joyned with a Participle expressed or understood (which is

alwaies *existens)* and having no word whereof it may be governed, is put in the Ablative case absolute, as *Rege veniente hostes fugerunt, me duce vinces.*

14 When two Verbs come together without any nominative case betweene them, the latter shall be the Infinitive moode, as *Cupio discere*, I desire to learne.

15 When the English of the Infinitive moode (that hath Gerunds) cometh after any of these Nounes Substantives, *Desire, Time, Leave*, &c. it shall be made in the Gerund in *Di*, as *Studium videndi*, a desire to see, *Licentia Nubendi*, leave to be married &c. and likewise after certaine Adjectives, as *Cupidus videndi*, desirous to see, *certus eundi*, sure to goe.

16 The English of the same Infinitive moode, comming after such words as will admit of the signe for to be made by the Præposition *ab*, or *propter*; or the signe *to*, to be made by the Præposition, *ad*, as likewise a Verb of *motion*, or these words, *Natus* borne, *Commodus, Utilis*, profitable; *Incommodus, Inutilis* unprofitable. *Aptus, Idoneus* fit, and it may be made by the Gerund in, *Dum.*

17 When you have this English *must* or *ought*, in a sentence, it may be made either by *Oportet, debeo*, or a Participle of the future in *dus*, with the Dative of the *Agent*, as *Oportet me abire* I must goe hence, *Succumbere debet* he ought to yeeld, *Orandum est mihi*, I must pray.

18 Nounes that betoken *part*, or *continuance of time*, or *space of place*, may be put in the Accusative case, with the præposition expressed or understood.

19 The *proper name of a place*, having the signe, *at*, immediatly going before it, shall be put in the Genitive case, so that it be of the first or second declen-

sion,

sion, and singular number: but if it be the plurall only, it shall be put in the Dative or Ablative.

20 In translating of English we observe diverse (*That's*) foure whereof are words by themselves, as *That* a Relative, *That* a Conjunction, *That* a Demonstrative, and *That* a signe of an Accusative case before an Infinitive moode.

1 *That*, is a Relative when it may be turned into the English *who* or *which*.

2 *That*, is a Conjunction, when it is the English of *quod* or *ut*: It is the English of *ut*, when it comes after, *so*, or *such*, when it implies an end, when it comes after the English of *Fac* see thou, or *Fit* it comes to passe, or a Verb of intreating or commanding. It is the English of *Quod*, when it comes after any other Verb, and specially when it comes after the English of *Nihil est* there is no cause, or *quid est*, what is the cause.

3 *That*, is a Demonstrative when it is put with his Substantive for demonstration sake, as *that* man, *that* woman.

4 *That*, is a signe of an Accusative case before an Infinitive Moode, when it comes after any other Verb, besides these that are afore mentioned, and may be resolved into the conjunction *Quod*; and the rest thereof are part of the significations of other words, as *Quo* to the intent that, *Quin* but that, *postquam* or *post* for *postquam* after that, *quod* in that, *propterea quod* because, or *propterea quod* besides that, and *cum*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *siquidem* seeing that, which *Thats* may be known by the signification prefixed to them.

21 *But*, when it is a Copulative, coming after a negative, is not the English of *Sed*, but *nisi* or *præterquam*,

terquam, and when it comes after the word *cannot*, it is the Engliſh of *non*; as *non poſſum non mirari*, I cannot but wonder.

22 Theſe words, *Himſelfe* and *Themſelves* are often ſet after the verb, as if it were the Accuſative caſe, when as indeed they are the nominative, as *he found out the Muſick himſelfe*: that is, he himſelfe found out Muſick: they not only uſed theſe ſpeeches themſelves, (*i.*) they themſelves not only uſed.

23 When, *Notwithſtanding*, goes before, and *yet* comes after, it muſt be made by *quamvis*, or *quanquam*.

24 The Engliſh of the Infinitive moode of the Paſſive voice, coming after the Engliſh of the Verb *Sum*, in any perſon is uſually to be made by the Participle of the Future in *dus*.

25 *To ſee*, or any ſuch like expreſſion after a verb of *Motion*, may be made in Latine ſeaven waies. 1. By the Infinitive moode poetically, as *eo videre*. I goe to ſee. 2 By the Subjunctive moode, as *eo ut videam*. 3 By the Gerund in *di*, as *eo videndi cauſâ*. 4 By the Gerund in *dum*, as *eo Videndum*. 5 By the Adjective made of the Gerund, as *eo ad videndos illos*. 6 By the firſt ſupine, as *eo Viſum*. 7 By the Participle of the Future in *rus*, as *eo viſurus*.

26 In ſuch like expreſſions as theſe, *the more cruell the more terrible*, it muſt be made by theſe correſpondent Adverbs, *quo eo, tanto quanto*, and the Comparative degree: as *quo vel quanto crudelior, eo vel tanto terribilior*.

27 In ſuch like Engliſh expreſſions as theſe (as for mee) it muſt be made in latine by the Relative *quod*, and any of theſe Verbs, *Attinet, Pertinet, Spectat*.

28 When (as much) is in the clause afore going, and (*as*) in the clause next following, the first must be changed into *so much*, and be made by *Tantum* as in this example, *As much are we to regard our deliverance from dangers, as the collation of wealth and dignity upon our selves.*

29 The English word (*better*) put without a Substantive, and not coming after the English of *Sum*, is an Adverb; so the word *most*, put without a Substantive is the English of *Maximè*.

30 This word (*being*) doth imply foure things. 1 It is a signe of a case put by apposition in common nounes, as *opes irritamenta malorum*, riches being the inticements, &c. 2 Of an Adjective either Noune or Participle, as *dignus* being worthy, *doctus* being taught. 3 Of an Ablative case put absolute, severally as *Augusto imperante*, Augustus being Emperour; or joyntly with the Ablative case put by apposition, as *me duce*, I being Captaine. 4 Of a Gerund which is very seldome) which hath the Passive signification, as *timor vapulandi* the feare of being beaten: it may easily be discerned by the sence of the place, to which of these foure heads any may be referred.

31 Every word ending in *ing* (*being*, only excepted) is either a Verball Substantive, or some other, as a Gerund or a Participle, which distinctly are thus discerned. If it be a Verball Substantive, or some other, it will admit of the signes (*a*) or (*the*) before it. If a Participle it is without signe.

32 *How*, præfixed before an Adjective is alwaies *quàm*.

33 *Vocatus* or *Existens*, coming between two Substantives doth not hinder apposition, as *Cicero called*

led the Orator, Midas being King.

34 When you have *which*, *who*, or *whom*, you muſt looke backward for the antecedent Subſtantive, which the Relative rehearſeth, and forward for the Verb, which it either goes before, or is governed of.

35 *To*, or *for*, after the Engliſh of *Eſt*, or an Adjective, are commonly the ſignes of a Dative caſe.

36 *For*, if it be a Præpoſition implying the cauſe, is either *præ*, or *præter*, and after taking or changing, *pro*.

37 *Such*, before an Adjective, is made by *tam*, and not by *talis*.

38 *Of*, after *Propter*, is part of its ſignification, as *propter hanc rem*, by reaſon of this thing.

39 *It becometh*, is ambiguous. It is the Engliſh of *ſit*, an intranſitive, and *decet* a tranſitive.

43 The ſigne of the Infinitive moode implying an *end*, may be made better by the Subjunctive moode, as *Bonoſus did quaffe and drinke to the Embaſſadors of purpoſe to make them drunke.*

41 *Having*, immediatly before the Engliſh of the Participle of the præter tenſe, is a ſigne of the Accuſative caſe governed of it by *Synechdoche*, as *fultus latus*, having his ſide underpropped.

42 *Him* or *his*, *Them* or *theirs*, when there is no reciprocation or reflection, muſt be made in Latine by the oblique caſes of *Is*, *Ille*, and ſometimes *Ipſe*.

Reciprocation is when the Reciprocall Pronoune, reflects the action of the Verb upon it ſelfe, as upon the Agent, as *Pater amavit filium ſuum (i.) patris qui amavit.*

Reciprocation is made only in the continuance of the third perſon; the firſt or ſecond cannot be intermixed with it, as we cannot ſay *Ego fui ſecum, ſed*

cum

cum eo, nor *tu novisti fratrem suum sed ejus.*

When the Possessour works upon the thing possessed, and the possessed upon the possessour, the possessive *Suus*, is used, as *Homo perdit sua bona, & sua bona perdiderant hominem.*

In compound reciprocation (*i.*) such as is made with many verbs, when the action of the Verb following is reflected upon the Person of the Verb foregoing, it is expressed by *Sui*, as *Cæsar rogat me ut ad se veniam (i.) Cæsarem rogantem. Rogat me ut sibi ignoscam (i.) sibi roganti.*

In the Construction of two Verbs, which the Action of the latter passeth upon the person of the former, the Possessive *Suus* is used, as *Rogat me ut suum (id est, ejus ipsius qui rogat) restituam filium.*

If English Authors would adde (*selfe*) to (*him*) and (*owne*) to (*his*) then the Reciprocall Pronounes might easily be discerned, and so accordingly used in making of Latine: but the addition of these two words being often omitted, these rules are to be used to distinguish them from the oblique cases of *is, ille*, and sometimes *ipse.*

43 Two common substantives coming together, having the signe (*being*) placed betwixt them, are put in the same case by apposition, as the *Drones being a sluggish cattell, My Father loved me being a child* But many proper nounes Substantives, may be put in the same case by apposition, without the signe *being*, as *Marcus, Tullius, Cicero.*

44 An Active Participle in English, may be better made by the Passive Participle in Latine, the Substantive with which it agreeth, being put in the Ablative case absolute, as *Hearing this they fled*, not *hoc audiens*, but *hoc audito fugerunt.*

Whatsoe-

Whatsoever English expression comes not within the compasse of the rules of these directions, it must be unfolded and explained, and then the difficulty and ambiguity either will easily be removed, or will aptly fall under one of these rules, as for example, *He was one of Adrastus his chariot horses*, this knot must be thus untied, *He was one of the Horses of the Chariot of Adrastus.*

PROSODIA.

TO treat of *Feet*, *Meeters* and *Verſes* belongs to *Poetry*, not to *Grammar*, for without the knowledge of them, the pure Latine ſpeech may be acquired: neither is writing verſes the end of *Proſodie*, but right pronunciation, which is much furthered by the knowledge of the *quantity* of *ſyllables*. Now becauſe the knowledge of the quantity of Syllables is the foundation of Poetry, and Poetry the approbation of the knowledge of the quantity of Syllables, it will not be amiſſe to touch them both togither: partly that youth may be taught the beginnings of Poetry, and partly that the quantity of Syllables may be approved, by the authority of the Poets: ſo that it be remembred and acknowledged, that Verſifying is not of the eſſence of Grammar.

Firſt of the quantity of Syllables: for of Syllables are made Feete, of Feete Verſes.

Quantity or time is the meaſure of pronouncing a Syllable. In which reſpect a Syllable is ſaid to be three fold, Long, Short and Commune.

If thou deſireſt to know whether a Syllable be Long or Short, thou muſt conſider what Syllable of the Foote it is. If thou deſireſt to know the reaſon why it is long or ſhort, thou muſt obſerve what Syllable of the word it is. In which regard, a Syllable is ſaid to be three-fold, Firſt, Middle, Laſt, and every [illegible] ſaid to be middle ſave the firſt and the laſt.

laſt. Concerning which there are Generall rules, leſſe generall, and particular.

The Generall rules that extend themſelves to every Syllable, are foure in number *Poſition*, *Dipthong*, *Compoſition*, *Synæreſis*.

Poſition.

A Vowell before two Conſonants, or a double conſonant is every where long by Poſition in the ſame word, as *Ventus*, *conjungunt*, *refert*, *axis*, *patris*.

Poſition in diverſe words, is when the former ends with a conſonant, and the next word begins with a conſonant, as *Major ſum quam cui poſſit fortuna nocere*, or when the former word ends with a ſhort vowell, the next word begins with two conſonants, as *Occulta ſpolia & plures de pace triumphos*. *Virg.* this way is not ſo uſuall as the former.

An exception.

A Mute with the liquid, l, or r, in the ſame Syllable make a ſhort vowell going before common, as *Et primò ſimilis volūcri, mox vera volūcris*. *Ovid.* but a long vowell is not changed, as *Arātrum*, *ſimulācrum*, *ācrem*, *ātrum*.

Dipthong.

Every Dipthong with the Latines, is long in every ſyllable, as *aūrum Mecænas*, *muſæ*: unleſſe a vowell follow as, *præire Mæontis*, in diverſe words as *Implerunt montes*, *flerunt Rhodopeiæ arces*. *Ovid.*

Compoſition.

Words compounded not with Præpoſitions of three

three ſyllables (for thoſe belong to the middle ſylable only) but with other parts of ſpeech, doe follow the quantity of their ſimples, as *ſc̄licet*, *inf̄dus*, *quamvīs*. Except *ſemiſōpitus*, of *Sōpitus*, *vidēſis* of *vidē*, *valēdico* of *vale*, *magnīloquus* of *magni*, *cauſidicus maledīcus* of *dīco quandoq; quandōcunq; ubiq; ubilibet ibidem*, which have the middle long of Simples common, and *quandoquidem* ſhort, *ſiquidem* of *ſi*.

Synæreſis.

Synæreſis or Craſis doth make every Syllable long, as *nil* for *nihil*, *cogo* for *coago*, *tibicen* for *tibiicen*, *alvaria* for *alvearia*, *it* for *iit*, *abit* for *abiit*, *cai* for *Caii*, *Pompei* for *Pompeii*. *Quod peto da Cai, non peto conſilium. Mart.*

Leſſe generall which pertaine to the firſt and middle ſyllables, and they are three in number.

1 One vowell before another in diverſe ſyllables of the ſame word is ſhort.

Lucus in urbe fŭit mediâ lætiſſimus umbræ. Virg.

This Rule admits of five exceptions.

1 Except theſe Genitive caſes in, *ius*, as *unīus*, *aliūs*, &c. where *i*, is found common, although in *alterīus* it be alwaies ſhort, in *alīus* alwaies long.

2 The Genitive and Dative caſes of the fift declenſion, where, *e*, between double *i*, is made long, as *faciēi*, not otherwiſe, as *fidēi*.

3 *Fi*, alſo in *fio*, is long, unleſſe *e*, and *r*, follow together, as *fĭerem*, *fĭeri*,

Omnia nam fecit, fĭeri quæ poſſe negabam. Ovid.

4 *Ohe* an interjection hath the former doubtfull: *Eheu* alwaies long.

5 One vowell before another in greeke words is now and then long, as

Dicite

Dicite Pĕrides Respice lăerten. and in poſſeſſives, as *Æneia nutrix. Rhodopeius Orpheus.*

2 Derivatives have the ſame quantity with their Primitives, as *ămicus* of *ămo*, *amīcitia* of *amīcus*, *felīci* of *felix*, *felīcitas* of *felīci*, *fĭdelis* of *fĭdes*, *fidēlitas* of *fidēlis*, *fīdus* of *fīo*, *præſtĭturus* of *præſtĭtu*, *reſtĭtatus* of *reſtĭtu*. A few words are excepted, which being derived of ſhort words are made long, as *Vox vōcis a vŏco. Lex lēgis a lĕgo. Rex rēgis a rĕgo. Sēdes a Sĕdeo. Iūcundus a jŭvo. Iūniora jŭvenis. Fēriæ* of *fĕrio. Tēgula* of *tĕgo. Mācero* of *măcer. Hūmanus* of *hŏmo. Vōmer* of *vŏmo. Pēdor* of *pĕde. Penuria* of *pĕnus*, *sēcius* of *sĕcus*. *Suſpīcio* of *ſŭpĭcor*, *lāterna* of *lăteo*, *nōnies* of *nŏvem*; *dēcies* of *dĕcem*, *jūgerum* of *jŭgum*, *lemŭriæ* of *lemŭres*, *ſtātūrus* of *ſtātor*, *ſtāmen* of *ſtătu*. A few words on the contrary, which being derived of long words, are made ſhort, as *dux dŭcis a dūco*, *dŭcax* of *dūco*, *fĭdes* of *fīo*, *ărena ărĭſta* of *āreo*, *pŏſui* of *pōno*, *gĕnui* of *gīgno*, *frăgor frăgilis a frāngo*, *nŏta* of *nōtu*, *nătu* of *nātu*, *dĭſſertus* of *dĭſſero*, *Sŏpor* of *Sōpio*, *Să-gax* of *Sāgio*, *cŏma* of *cōmo*, *vărĭcoſus* of *vārior*, *lŭcerna* of *lūceo*, *quăſillus* of *quālus*, *păgella* of *pāgina*, *Sŏlutum* of *Sōlvi*, *vŏlutum* of *vōlvi*, *agnĭtum* of *agnōvi*, *cognĭtum* of *cognōvi*.

Derivative Adjectives in *inus*, have the laſt Syllable ſave one long, as *clandeſtīnus*, *matutīnus*, *veſpertīnus*, *&c.* Except *diutĭnus*, *craſtĭnus*, *priſtĭnus*, *perendĭnus*, *hornotĭnus*, *ſerotĭnus*, *oleagĭnus*, *fagĭnus*, and other adjectives which come of the greeks, *chryſtallĭnus*, *myrrhĭnus*, *hyacinthĭnus*, *adamantĭnus*, *&c.*

Derivative Adjectives in, *orus*, *oſus*, and adverbs in *tim*, have the laſt ſave one long, as *canōrus*, *vi-nōſus*

nōsus, *virītim*, except *affătim* and *perpĕtim* short, and *statim* doubtfull.

Diminutives in, *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, and *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, also verballs in *ilis*, and *bilis*, and Adverbs in *itus*, have the last save one short, as *filiolus*, *filiola*, *filiolum*; *servulus servula servulum*; *pensilis*, *flebilis*, *funditus*, *penitus*.

Desideratives have the middle syllable short, as *Ēsŭrio*, *partŭrio*, except *scatūrio*.

Every præterperfect tense ending in *vi*, or *si*, have the last save one long, as *amavi*, *petivi*, *divisi*.

Rimus and *ritis* in the præterperfect tense short, in the Future tense long.

All Supines above two syllables have the middle long, as *amātum*, *petītum*, *divīsum*, *solūtum*, *indūtum*. Except supines in *itum*, whose præterperfect tense end not in, *ivi*, as *genĭtum*, *vendĭtum*, *monĭtum*, &c.

3 Authority, being the testimony and warrant of the most approved Poets, which is the most profitable and surest way of all: for in words above two Syllables, when as the quantity of the last syllable save one, is known neither by the increase of the noune, nor by the analogy of the conjugation, nor the quantity of other middle syllables by derivation and composition, nor any other way, we presently fly unto authority, as our last, surest, and safest refuge.

The waies that respect the first syllable only, are two, Præposition and Rule.

1 A præposition in composition retaines his quantity, as *traduco*, unles Position hinder, as *addo*, *rejicio*, or a vowell follow, as *dehiscens*, *præustus*.

Am, is long by position, unles it be changed into,

an,

in, and a vowell as *anhelo*.

Di, is made long, except in *dirimo*, and *disertus*.

Con, also, unlesse it loose his *n*, a vowell following, as *coarguo*, *coacervo*, or change his *n*, into *m*, as *comedo*: for the ancients were wont to make *m*, in the end short, Eclipsis being omitted, which is yet retained, as *circumago*, *circumeo*.

Re, is short, unlesse in *refert*, which (as some will have it) is compounded of the noune *re*, not of the Præposition.

Pro, also is long, except in these, *Prŏcello*, *procella*, *profugus*, *protervus*, *pronepos*, *profanus*, *profundus*, *proficiscor*, *profari*, *profugio*, *profecto*, *professus*. But these *procumbo*, *procuro*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *propago*, whether noune or verb, have the first Syllable common. Greek words compounded with *πρὸ* are short, as *Propheta*, *prologus*, *Prometheus*; but *pro* in *propino* is common.

¶ Rule. Every Præterperfect tense and supine of two syllables, hath the former long, as *legi*, *emi*, *lasum*, *motum*, except *fidi* of *findo*, *bibi*, *dedi*, *scidi*, *steti*, *tuli*, and *quitum*, *situm*, *litum*, *itum*, *rutum*, *vatum*, *datum*, *satum*, and *citum* of *cieo*, *cies*: for *citum* of *cio*, *cis*, of the fourth conjugation, hath the former long. Verbs doubling the first syllable of the præterperfect tense, have the first syllable likewise short, as *pĕpendi*, *tetendi*, *tŏtondi*, *momordi*, *pepedi*, *tutudi*, *fefelli*, *tetigi*, *pupugi*, *didici*. *&c.*

Those Rules that pertaine to the middle syllable only, are

¶ *Composition* in those words only that are compounded with præpositions of three syllables, for a præposition according to his notation must be set before, which makes the first syllable of the simple word

word to be middle in the compound.

In Decompounds a præpoſition is made the middle, as *indeſtibatus, inevitabilis, inexorabilis, irreparabilis.* Compounds of this ſort alſo doe follow the quantity of their ſimples, as *Potens impotens, ſolor conſolor, cædo excīdo, cado excīdo, quæro acquīro,* except *iuuĕba, pronŭba a nŭbo, defĕro, pejĕro a jūro; perfīdus a fĭdus.*

2 The increaſe of the nouns: thoſe of the ſecond ſpeciall rule, have the laſt ſyllable ſave one long, as *mos mōris, virtus virtūtis,* thoſe of the third have the laſt ſyllable ſave one ſhort, as *pes pĕdis, ſanguis ſanguĭnis.*

3 The Analogy of the conjugation, *a,* in the firſt; *e,* in the ſecond, *i,* in the fourth, are long, as *amāre, docēre, audīre, e,* in the third ſhort, as *legĕre, legĕrem.* Except *do,* and his compounds when they are of the firſt conjugation, as *dămus, circundămus, dăbis, circundăbis, dăre, circundăre.*

Rules particular to the laſt ſyllable only.

Words ending in, *a,* are long, as *amā, contrā, ergā.* Except *eiă, illă, quiă.* Likewiſe all caſes in *a,* except vocatives in *a,* of Greeke words in, *as, es,* as *ō Æneă, ō Thomă,* and the Ablative caſe of the firſt declenſion, as *muſă.* Numerals, in *ginta,* having the end more uſually long, as *triginta, quadraginta.* Words ending in, *b, d, t,* as, *ab, ad, caput,* except Hebrew words in *b,* and *d,* which are long, as *Iacob, Iob, David.* Words ending in *e,* are long, as, *ne, ſic, hic,* the adverb. But two words in *e,* are alwaies ſhort, as

nec, donec: and two alſo common, as *fac*, the Pronoune *hic*, and this neuter *hoc*, ſo that it be not the Ablative caſe. Words in *e*, are ſhort, as *mare, ſcribe, lege*: all nounes of the firſt Declenſion are excepted, as *diē fidē*, togither with the Adverbs thereof compounded, as *hodiē, quotidiē, pridiē, poſtridiē, quarē, &c.* alſo *famē*: and the ſecond perſons ſingular of the Imperatives of the Active forme of the ſecond conjugation, as *docē, manē*, words of one ſyllable in *e*, are long, as *me, te, ſe*, except *que, ne, ve*, enclitick conjugations, and ſyllabicall adjections, *ce, te, pte*, as *hiſcĕ, tutĕ, tuoptĕ*. Adverbs derived of Adjectives of the ſecond declenſion, have *e*, long, as *pulchrè, doctè, valdè*, to which are added *fermè, ferè*, and *ohe*, but *benè* and *malè* are altogether ſhort. Laſtly, thoſe which come of Greeke words written with *ŭ*, are long by nature, as *lethē, anchiſē, cetē, Tempē*. Words ending in *i*, are long, as *domini; magiſtri, amari, doceri*; Except *mihi, tibi, ſibi, ubi, ibi*, which are common, but *nĭſi* and *quaſi* are ſhort, of which ſort alſo are the Dative and Vocative caſes of the Greekes, whoſe Genitive ſingular ends in *os*, as *huic Palladi, Phillidi, Minoidi, ō Amarylli, Alexi, Daphni*. Words ending in *l*, are ſhort, as *animal, mel, pugil, conſul*, except *ſal, ſol*, and *nil*, contracted of *nihil*, and ſome hebrew words, as *Michachael, Gabriel, Raphael, Daniel*. Words ending in *n*, are long, as *Pæan, quin, non, Dæmon*: except *forſan, forſitan, an, tamen, attamen*, in with his compounds as *exin, ſubin, dein, proin*: to which are added thoſe that ſuffer Apocopen, as *audin', nemon', noſtin'*. Likewiſe nounes in *en*, whoſe Genitive caſe hath *inis*, ſhort, as *carmen, crimen, pecten, tibicen, tibicinis*: Greeke nounes alſo in, *on*, written with litle

cle *o*, as *Ilion*, *Pelion*, *Cautaſon*, *Pylon*, ſome alſo in *in*, or *yn*, as *Alexin*, *Ityn*: in *an* alſo, of nominatives in *a*, as nominative *Iphigenia*, *Ægina*, Accuſative, *Iphigenian*, *Æginan*: for in *an*, of nominatives in *as*, are long, as Nominative *Æneas*, *Marſyas*, Accuſative *Æneān*, *Marſyān*. Words ending in *o*, are common, as *amo*, *virgo*, *porro*, *docendo*, *legendo*, *eundo*, *&c.* except the oblique caſes in *o*, which are alwaies long, as *domino*, *ſervo*, *damno*: and adverbs derived of Adjectives, as *tantō*, *quantō*, *liquidō*, *falsō*, *tō*, with his compounds, *adeō*, *ideō*, *&c.* Except *ſedulō*, *mutuō*, *crebrō*, *ſerō*, which are common, and *modō*, *quomodō*, *citō*, which are ſhort. *Ambo*, *duo*, *ego*, *homo*, *ſcio*, *neſcio*, *imo*, *illicō*, are ſcarce read long. Words of one ſyllable in *o*, are long, as *do*, *ſto*, as alſo *ergō* for *cauſā*, alſo Greeke words written with great *o*, as *Sappho*, *Dido*, *Androgeo*, *Apollo*, *Atho*. Except thoſe that are made of Greeke words in *on*, *n*, being caſt away, as *Platŏ*, *Legŏ*. Words ending in *r*, are ſhort, as *Cæſar*, *torcular*, *per*, *vir*, *uxor*, *turtur*: but *far*, *lar*, *nar*, *ver*, *fur*, *cur*, and *par*, with his compounds, as *compar*, *impar*, *diſpar*, are long. Greeke words alſo in *er*, written by them with *r*, as *aer*, *crater*, *character*, *æther*, *ſēter*; except *pater*, *mater*, which with the Latines have the laſt ſhort. Words endivg in *as*, are long, as *amas*, *muſas*, *majeſtas*, *bonitas*, except thoſe whoſe genitive caſe ſingular makes *adis*, as *vas vadis*, *Pallas palladis*; and the Accuſative plurall of Greeke nounes of the third declenſion, as *heros herois*, *Hector hectoris*, accuſative plurall *heroas*, *hectoras*. Words ending in, *es*, are long, as *Anchiſes*, *ſedes*, *doces*, *patres*. Nounes in *es*, of the third declenſion, which make ſhort the laſt ſyllable ſave one of the Genitive increaſing, are

excepted, as *miles*, *seges*, *dives*, but *aries*, *abies*, *paries*, *ceres*, and *pes*, together with the compounds *bipes*, *tripes*, *quadrupes*, are long. Es also of *Sum*, together with his compounds is short, as *potes*, *ades*, *prodes*, *obes*, to which *penes* may be added, together with neuters, and nominatives plurall of the Greeks, as *Hippomenes*, *Cacoethes*, *Cyclôpes*, *Naïdes*. Words ending in, *is*, are short, as *Paris*, *panis*, *tristis*, *hilaris*, except obliques in, *is*, as *Musis*, *dominis*, *templis*, *&c.* which are alwaies long. Likewise nominatives in *is*, making long the last syllable save one of the Genitive increasing, as *sannis*, *salamis*, genitive *sannitis*, *salaminis*. Adde to these words in *is*, which come of Gre ke words in *eis*, as *Simāis*, *Pirōis*, and the Adverbs *foris* and *gratis*. All monosyllables in, *is*, are long, as *vis*, *lis*, *&c.* Except, *is*, and *quis*, nominatives, and *bis*. To these are added the second persons singular of the present tense, of the Indicative moode, of Verbs of the fourth Conjugation, as *audis*, *garris*. Likewise *velis* and *sis*, with his compounds. Futures of the Subjunctive moode in, *ris*, are common, as *Is*, *mihi dives eris*, *si causas egeris*, *inquit*. *Mart' Da mihi te placidum*, *dederis in carmine vires*. *Ovid.* Words ending in *os*, are long, as *honos*, *nepos*, *dominos*, *servos*. Except *compos*, *impos*, *os ossis*, and Greeke words written with little *o*, as *Delos*, *chaos Pallados*, *Phyllidos* Words ending in *us*, are short, as *famulus*, *regius*, *tempus*, *amamus*; Nounes making long the last syllable save one of the Genitive case encreasing, are excepted, as *Salus*, *tellus*, genitive *Salūtis*, *tellūris*: all words in *us*, of the fourth declension are long, except the nominative and Vocative singular, and dative and Ablative plurall, as *hujus manūs*, *hæc manūs*, *has manūs*, *ô*

manūs

manūs. To theſe are added words of one ſyllable, as *aurus, mus, ſus*. Alſo words in *us*, that are made of Greeke nounes, written with the dipthong *ous*, as *Panthus, Melampus, Sapphus, Clius*, except *Oedipūs* and *Polypūs* of the ſecond declenſion. All words in *u*, are long, as *manu, genu. amatu, diu*. words ending in, *y*, are ſhort, as *Moly, Tiphy*.

Of Feet pertaining to a Verſe.

A Foot is the ſetting together of two ſyllables or more, according to the obſervation of the quantity thereof. Feet (ſo farre as we intend to ſpeak of here) are of two ſorts. *Diſſyllable Spondeus*, as *Virtūs. Pyrrichius, as, Dĕŭs. Trochæus, as, pānĭs. Iambus, as ămān*. Triſlyllable, *Dactylus, as, ſcrĭbĕrĕ. Anapæſtus, as, pŭĕrās. Tribrachus, as Dŏmĭnŭs*. Feete being placed together in a juſt number and order doe make a Verſe. A Verſe is a ſpeech made of a juſt and lawfull number of feet. He that will goe about to make a Verſe, muſt firſt learne to meaſure it rightly by his feete, which men call Scanning. Scanning is the lawfull meaſuring of a Verſe, into his ſeverall feete.

Of the kinds of Verſes.

The kinds of Verſes that we are determined to handle in this place are theſe, *Hexameter, Pentameter, Aſclepiade, Glyconicke, Sapphick, Phaleuctan, Iambicke*.

An *Hexameter* conſiſts of feete in number fixe, but in kinde two, of a *Dactyl* and a *Spondey*, the fift

place doth peculiarly challenge to it selfe a Dactyl foote, the sixth a Spondey, the rest of the places this foot or that at our liberty, *as*

Tytĭrĕ tū pătŭlæ rĕcŭbāns sub tēgmĭne fāgī. Virg.

A Spondey foote sometimes is found in the fift place, as

Chārā Dĕūm Sŏbŏlēs, māgnūm Iŏvis īncrēmēntūm V.

The last syllable of every verse is common.

A *Pentameter* doth consist of a double *Penthemimer*, the former whereof doth comprehend two feete, Dactyls, Spondeys or either of them, with a long syllable: the other also two feete, but altogether Dactyls, *as*

Rēs ēst sōllĭcĭtī plēnă tĭmōrīs ămōr. Ovid.

An *Asclepiad* consists of a Spondey, Dactyl and a long syllable, and then of two dactyls, *as*

Mēcænās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs. Hor.

A *Glyconick* consists of a Spondey and two Dactyls, *as* *Sīc tē Dīvă pŏtēns Cyprĭ. Hor.*

A *Sapphicke* consists of a *Trochey*, *Spondey*, *Dactyle*, and then of two *Trocheys*. In this kind of Verse, after three verses is added an *Adonicke*, which consists of a Dactyl and a Spondey, as

Intĕgēr vītæ, scĕlĕrīsquĕ pūrŭs.
Nōn ĕgēt māurī ĭăcūlis, nĕc ārcŭ,
Nēc vĕnēnātīs grăvĭdā săgīttĭs
Fūscĕ phărētrā. Hor.

A *Phaleucian* consists of Spondey, Dactyl, and three Trocheys, *as*

Qūod sīs ēssĕ vĕlīs, nĭhĭlquĕ mălĭs. Mart.
Sūmmum nēc mĕtŭās dĭēm, nĕc ōptĕs. Idem.

A pure Iambicke Verse is that which consists only of Iambicks: but it receives in the odde places, both an Iambick, and a Spondey sometime also, but seldome

dome a Tribrack, or Dactyl, and an Anapæst. In the even places an Iambick, and sometimes a Tribracke, but not in the last seate. It is meete that it alwaies have two Iambicks: the odde places are first, third, fift: the even places, second, fourth, sixth. This Verse is divided into two kindes, a *Dimeter* or *Quaternarie*. *Trimeter* or *Senarie*, a *Dimeter* consists of foure feet as, *Sŭīs pĕrībĭt ārtĭbūs*

Scĕlēstă frāus, ĕt īncĭdēnt
In īpsă cæcī rētĭ ā,
Qūæ clām bŏnīs tĕtēndĕrănt. *Buc.*

A *Trimeter* consists of sixe feete, as
Sŭīs ĕt ĭpsă Rōmă vīrĭbūs rŭīt. *Hor.*

Of Poeticall figures.

There be eight poeticall Figures.

Systole.	*Diæresis.*
Diastole.	*Synæresis.*
Synalæpha.	Διάλυσις.
Ecthlipsiis.	*Cæsura.*

Systole, is when a Syllable long by nature is made short, as *Matri longa decē tulĕrunt fastidia menses. V. Connubio jungam stabili propriamq́ dĭcabo. Idem.*

Diastole is when a syllable short by nature, is made long as,
Dona de hinc auro graviā sectoq́ Elephanto. Virg.

Synalæpha, is the cutting off of a Vowell before another in diverse words.
Sera nimis vit' est crastina, viv' hodiè. Mart.

But *hu*, *ô*, *ah*, *io*, are never cut off.

Ecthlipsis is when *m*, with his vowell is cut off, the next word begining with a vowell, as
Monstru' horrend' inform' ingens, cui lumen ademptū

Diæresis is when one syllable divided is made

two

two as, *Debuerant fusos evomisse suos.* *Ovid.*

Synerefis, is when two syllables are contracted into one as, *Seu lento fuerint alv' aria vimine texta.* *Virg.*

Dialysis is a dissolution, whereby a word placed in the end of a Verse, is so separated, that one part is in the precedent Verse, the other part in the beginning of the next Verse. as

Labitur ripâ Iove non probante uxorius amnis. *Horat.*

Cæsura, is when aften an absolute foot, a short syllable in the end of a word is made long, of which there are foure kinds.

1 A *Triemimer*, consisting of three halfe parts, that is a foote and a halfe, as,

Pectoribūs inhians spirantia consulit exta. *Virg.*

2 A *Penthemimer*, consisting of five halfe parts, that is, two feet and a halfe, *as*

Omnia vincit amōr & nos cedamus amori. *Ov.*

3 An *Hepthimimer*, consisting of seaven halfe parts, that is, three feet and a halfe, *as*

Ostentans artem paritēr arcumq́ sonantem. *Virg.*

4 *Enneemimer*, consisting of nine halfe parts, that is, foure feet and a halfe, *as*

Ille latus niveum molli fultūs hyacintho. *Virg.*

There are many more observations and exceptions about the quantity of syllables and Verses, but mine intent was here to give only a tast thereof for young beginners sakes, both because it is not of the Essence of Grammar, and chiefely because other authors, as *Smetius*, *Butler*, *Pantaleon*, *Tigurinus*, have written sufficiently of the same subject.

FINIS.